

جديد

كود الأضواء  
للتعلم التفاعلي

12345 67890

New  
Hello!



2021



**2<sup>nd</sup> Prep**  
Second Term

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2 - 5 WB pages 70 & 71



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1				
app	تطبيق	headphones	سماعات الرأس	push (ed) يدفع
change (d)	يغير	helicopter	طائرة عمودية/هليكوبتر	solar panels ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
clever jacket	سترة ذكية	invent (ed)	يخترع	speed سرعة
electricity	كهرباء	invention	اختراع	technology التكنولوجيا
future	مستقبل	motorbike	دراجة نارية	translate (d) يترجم

### Lesson 2

choice	اختيار	pollution	التلوث
delivery	توصيل/تسليم	prefer (red)	يفضل
online shopping	التسوق عبر الإنترنت	shop (ped) online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

### Lesson 1

description	وصف	language	لغة	soon	قريباً
famous	مشهور	latest	آخر/أحدث	use (d)	يستخدم
flying	طائر (شيء يطير)	maybe	ممكن/ربما	used	مستخدم/مستعمل
glass	زجاج	prediction	تنبؤ	useful	مفید
hope (d)	يأمل	road	طريق	weather	الطقس

## Lesson 2

a lot of = lots of	كثيراً من	free time	وقت الفراغ	secondly	ثانية
article	مقال	great	عظيم	snake	ثعبان
businesses	أعمال تجارية	happen (ed)	يحدث	stay (ed)	يبقى/يقيم/يظل
every time	كل مرة	pass (ed)	ينجح في	tonight	هذه الليلة
everything	كل شيء	probably	من المحتمل	try (yied)	يجرب/يحاول
firstly	أولاً	real	حقيقي		

## Language Expressions

## العبارات اللغوية

## Lesson 1

make ▶	electricity	يصنع/يولد كهرباء
--------	-------------	------------------

use ▶ an app يستخدم تطبيقاً

## Lesson 2

do ▶	the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق
------	--------------	--------------

spend ▶ money ينفق مالاً  
time يقضى وقتاً

get ▶	home	يصل إلى البيت
-------	------	---------------

stay at ▶ home يبقى في المنزل

go ▶	shopping	ينذهب للتسوق
------	----------	--------------

take ▶ turns يتبدل الأدوار

have ▶	a choice	لديه اختيار
--------	----------	-------------

try ▶ things يجرب الأشياء

make ▶	money	لديه مال
--------	-------	----------

use ▶ the internet يستخدم الانترنت

time	يقضى/لديه وقت
------	---------------

wait for ▶ a delivery يتظاهر خدمة التوصيل

make ▶	a story	يؤلف قصة
--------	---------	----------

waste ▶ money يهدى مالاً

save ▶	money	يدخر مال
--------	-------	----------

waste ▶ time يهدى وقتاً

time	يوفّر وقتاً
------	-------------

push into the air يدفع في الهواء

## Prepositions

## دروف الجر

## Lesson 1

agree/disagree with	يتفق/لا يتفق مع
---------------------	-----------------

find out about يعرف/يكشف عن

push into the air يدفع في الهواء

at the same time	في نفس الوقت
------------------	--------------

from the internet من الانترنت

translate into يترجم إلى

at the speed of	على سرعة
-----------------	----------

in the future في المستقبل

talk to يتحدث إلى

change into	يتحوّل إلى
-------------	------------

in your opinion في رأيك

talk about يتحدث عن

drive on	يقود على
----------	----------

need to + inf. يحتاج أن

useful for مفيدة لـ

## UNIT

## 7

## Lesson 2

for or against	مع او ضد	go out	يخرج	look online for	يبحث على الانترنت عن
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	in a few minutes	في بعض دقائق	on the road	في الطريق
at home	في البيت	in pairs	في ثنائيات	What type of ... ?	مانوع ... ؟

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعکسها

## Lesson 1

agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق	strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
high	عالٍ	low	منخفض	useful	مفید	useless	عديم الفائدة
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام	warm	دافئ	cool	مائل للبرودة

## Lesson 2

finish (ed)	ينهى	start (ed)	يبدأ	online	عبر الانترنت	offline	غير متصل بالانترنت
more	أكثر	less	أقل	wrong	خطأ	right	صحيح

## Conjugations of irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

## Present

## Past simple

## Past participle

## Lesson 1

become	يصبح	became	become
build	يبني	built	built
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
fly	يطير	flew	flown
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
make	يصنع/ يجعل	made	made
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought

## Lesson 2

find	يجد	found	found
spend	يقضى/ينفق	spent	spent

## Language Notes

**1 another + اسم مفرد آخر / other اخر جمع**

- When these headphones hear **another language**, they can translate it into your language.
- Most people like technology, but **other people** don't like it.

**half-** نصف (وهى توضى قبل الاسم لتعنى نصف هذا الشىء فى موصافاته)

- half-motorbike** نصف هيليكوبتر / half-helicopter نصف دراجة نارية

**use/ used/ useful**

**use + شىء + to + inf.**

يستخدم ..... لـ

- This clever jacket **uses** an app **to make** you warmer.

**used (adj.)**

مستخدم/مستعمل

- I think the four inventions will become the most **used**.

**useful for + something/ v.ing**

مفید لـ

- My new car will be very **useful for** travelling.

- This basket will be **useful for** picnics.

يجعل

**make + مفعول + adj.**

- This clever jacket **makes** you warmer when the weather is cold.

يساعد

**help + مفعول + inf. / to + inf.**

- It **helps** people **speak/to speak** other languages.

**spend + وقت + (v. + ing) / يقضى / waste + وقت + (v. + ing)**

**/ prefer + (v. + ing) / يفضل**

- I don't want to **spend** lots of time **travelling** to the shops.

- I don't like to **waste** time **waiting** for a delivery.

- I **prefer going** to real shops in my city.



### Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I always help my mother ..... the housework.

- a) do      b) doing      c) to doing      d) did

2 Young people spend too much time ..... the internet.

- a) use      b) using      c) to use      d) to using

3 The ancient Egyptians used the sun ..... the time.

- a) know      b) to know      c) knowing      d) to knowing

## Write it right



### How to write about new inventions

كيفية الكتابة عن الاختراعات الحديثة.

- Inventions are very important because they make our life easier and better.
- I think they will invent (اسم الاختراع).
- The (نكتب تفاصيل عمّا يمكن للاختراع القيام به) can (الاختراع).
- I also think they will invent (اسم الاختراع).
- New inventions will have a great effect on our life.

#### Example

#### New inventions

Inventions are very important because they make our life easier and better. Scientists try hard to invent new things. I think they will invent new headphones. These headphones can translate any languages. When these headphones hear another language, they can translate it into your language. I also think they will invent a new machine that can push you into the air at the speed of a fast car. It's half-motorbike and half-helicopter. They will probably invent a new jacket. It's a clever jacket. It uses an app to make you warmer when the weather is cold. There will be new roads. They will change roads into solar panels. These roads use strong glass that you can drive on and make electricity at the same time. New inventions will have a great effect on our life.

#### Writing tips

- Brainstorm ideas and organise your topic.
- قبل البدء في الكتابة فكر جيداً فيما سوف تتحدث عنه و قم بترتيب أفكارك.

#### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of about (90) words on a new invention.

#### "A new invention"

## Lesson 1



## Listening Text

## Pre-listening question:

- In your opinion, what is the best invention you have used?

**2. Listen to four people. Match the inventions 1 – 4 on page 2 with the people who talk about them.**

(Is it a **motorbike** <sup>(1)</sup>? Is it a **helicopter** <sup>(2)</sup>? No, this invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter! It can push you into the air at the **speed** <sup>(3)</sup> of a fast car!)

**Hatem:** Wow! That looks so cool! I'm not sure it's very useful though? It won't be able to fly very high, will it?



(When these **headphones** <sup>(4)</sup> hear another language, they can **translate** <sup>(5)</sup> it into your language.)



**Manal:** I think lots of people will want to buy one of these, they'll be very useful for travelling. It won't help people to speak other languages though, will it? It's only good for listening.

(This **clever jacket** <sup>(6)</sup> uses an **app** <sup>(7)</sup> to make you warmer when the weather is cold.)

**Tarek:** I think this is a good idea for people in cold places. It won't be very useful for me though! Maybe they will make one to make people feel cooler. That would be good here in the summer!



(Change roads into **solar panels** <sup>(8)</sup>! This **invention** <sup>(9)</sup> uses strong glass that you can drive on and **make electricity** <sup>(10)</sup> at the same time.)



**Sawsan:** I think that is an amazing invention. I hope they will build lots of these in Egypt. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of electricity.

**Post-listening question:** - Which invention do you like most? Why?

- |                           |
|---------------------------|
| دراجة نارية (1)           |
| هليكوبتر/طائرة عمودية (2) |
| سرعة (3)                  |
| سماعات الرأس (4)          |
| يترجم (5)                 |
| سترة ذكية (6)             |
| تطبيق (7)                 |
| أداة الطاقة الشمسية (8)   |
| اختراع (9)                |
| يتجهز كهرباء (10)         |

**Pre-reading question:**

- What type of things do you like to buy? Why?

**3. Read the article. Can you find any of the phrases from Exercise 2 in the text? Use your dictionary if necessary.** *SB page 4*

**Shopping online – Yes or No?****Injy – I love online shopping<sup>(1)</sup>!**

Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves me time<sup>(2)</sup>.

I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops.

I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes.

Secondly, I have more choices<sup>(3)</sup> online. Also, if more people shop online<sup>(4)</sup>, there will be fewer cars on the road and less pollution<sup>(5)</sup>! I will do all my shopping<sup>(6)</sup> online when I am older.



التسوق عبر الانترنت (1)

يوفّر وقتاً (2)

خيارات (3)

يتسوق عبر الانترنت (4)

تلوث (5)

يقوم بكل التسوق (6)

توصيل/تسليم (7)

أعمال تجارية (8)

**Baher – I prefer going to real shops in my city.**

Every time I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong! At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can try it first. Also, I don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery<sup>(7)</sup> – I want things now!

If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. If they close, then lots of other businesses<sup>(8)</sup> like cafés will close, too.



**Post-reading questions:** 1. What's Baher's problem with online shopping?  
2. Why does Injy love online shopping?

**Life Skills**

It is important to know about the latest technology. You might need to know this for a future job. How can you find out about the latest technology?



## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I like to use my ..... to listen to music on my mobile phone.  
 a) charger      b) headphones      c) laptop      d) microphones
- 2 My elder brother can ..... from Arabic into English well.  
 a) invent      b) find      c) push      d) translate
- 3 Our new car can go at the ..... of 220 km/h.  
 a) speed      b) height      c) age      d) width
- 4 I have many ..... on my mobile phone that help me with my study.  
 a) machines      b) icons      c) apps      d) tabs
- 5 Scientists use solar ..... to make electricity.  
 a) towers      b) roads      c) tunnels      d) panels
- 6 Planes, mobile phones and rockets are great .....  
 a) views      b) invitations      c) inventions      d) pollution
- 7 Every student should make a study plan to ..... their time.  
 a) save      b) have      c) wait      d) waste
- 8 I don't like shopping online because I don't like ..... a delivery.  
 a) selling      b) waiting for      c) spending      d) wasting
- 9 Many people can ..... their shopping online.  
 a) go      b) do      c) save      d) waste
- 10 I always help my mother ..... the weekend.  
 a) for      b) of      c) in      d) at
- 11 Many cars on the roads cause more .....  
 a) pollution      b) floods      c) inventions      d) earthquakes
- 12 My sister likes to ..... her mobile every year.  
 a) make      b) save      c) waste      d) change
- 13 It is important to know about the ..... technology.  
 a) lost      b) latest      c) least      d) list
- 14 Can you tell me whether you are ..... or against online shopping?  
 a) for      b) at      c) into      d) to
- 15 My grandmother thinks that online shopping isn't great, but I .....  
 a) agree      b) disagree      c) accept      d) expect





## Language

### The future with "will"

المستقبل

#### Form

التكوين

Subject الفاعل + will ('ll) + inf.

- We **will** travel to England next week.
- He'll visit us tomorrow.

#### Negative

النفي

Subject الفاعل + will not (won't) + inf.

- My father **will not** come late tonight.
- I **won't** go to the club this evening.

#### 1. We use **will** and **will not** (or **won't**) to talk about future predictions.

١- تُستخدم للتتحدث عن التنبؤات المستقبلية. (تبؤ بدون دليل).

- The new bikes **will be** very useful for travelling.
- He **won't be** able to work for 10 hours daily.
- What invention do you hope we **will see** in the future?

#### 2. We use **if/when** to talk about things in the future which we think will probably happen.

٢- نستخدم (إذا/عندما) للتتحدث عن أشياء في المستقبل نعتقد أنها من المحتمل أن تحدث.

#### If / When

- If/When + present simple، مضارع بسيط subject + will/won't + inf.
- Subject + will/won't + inf. + if/when + present simple مضارع بسيط

- If everyone **shops** online, the shops in our towns and cities **will close**.
- I **will do** all my shopping online **when I am** older.
- When** Huda **visits** Cairo, she **will buy** some new shoes.

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- Sara will buy a new car if she ..... (**have**) a lot of money.
- If I study today, I ..... (**go**) to the party.

لاحظ ما يلي:

١- يستخدم المستقبل مع بعض التعبيرات التالية:

I'm sure - I think - I promise - I hope - Maybe - in the future - soon

- Maybe they will make a jacket to help people be cooler.

- I hope they will build lots of these roads in Egypt.

٢- عند التعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء في المستقبل نستخدم:

سوف يكون قادرًا على + الفاعل + will be able to + inf.

- If my mother has more free time, we'll be able to go out.

- If I buy everything online, I won't be able to go shopping with my friends.

٣- استخدام (will) مع المجهول : passive

التصريف الثالث لل فعل + (will/ won't) be + P.P. + المفعول به

- I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon.

Will + object + be + P.P. + المفعول به

- Will these inventions be used very much in Egypt?

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. A new clever jacket will ..... (invent) in the future.

2. Will the flying motorbike be ..... (use) in Egypt soon?



### Check Point

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 He ..... you when he's on the bus.

- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| a) texts  | b) will text |
| c) texted | d) text      |

2 She'll be late if the train ..... come on time.

- |            |          |
|------------|----------|
| a) doesn't | b) won't |
| c) hasn't  | d) isn't |

3 More schools ..... in the future.

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| a) build         | b) will build   |
| c) will be built | d) are building |

## Language Exercises

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 If I go to the shops on Saturday, I ..... some new headphones. WB
  - a) buy
  - b) bought
  - c) am buying
  - d) will buy
  
- 2 If you go to the Egyptian Museum in Cairo this afternoon, you ..... Ali because he is in Luxor. WB
  - a) should see
  - b) will see
  - c) won't see
  - d) don't see
  
- 3 In 30 years, the world ..... different. WB
  - a) be
  - b) will
  - c) will be
  - d) is
  
- 4 Maybe computers ..... to all the machines in our homes in the future. WB
  - a) will talk
  - b) talk
  - c) talking
  - d) talked
  
- 5 Our parents ..... to the supermarket to buy food in ten years. WB
  - a) didn't go
  - b) haven't gone
  - c) don't go
  - d) won't go
  
- 6 Do you know what will ..... in the future? WB
  - a) happen
  - b) happens
  - c) happening
  - d) happened
  
- 7 I'll call you when I ..... at my hotel. WB
  - a) will arrive
  - b) arrived
  - c) arrive
  - d) arrives
  
- 8 If we have more free time, we will ..... visit our grandparents. WB
  - a) able to
  - b) be able to
  - c) be able
  - d) able
  
- 9 I hope the clever jacket ..... soon. WB
  - a) will use
  - b) will used
  - c) will be use
  - d) will be used

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1 I think our team ..... (win) the next match.
- 2 Maybe she ..... (do) her shopping online.
- 3 She hopes that he ..... (cook) dinner tonight.
- 4 I'm sure they ..... (not/go) to the party.
- 5 We will be late if we ..... (not/hurry).

 Speaking

## Discussing new inventions

مناقشة الاختراعات الجديدة

 Which of the inventions do you think will become the most used? Why?

أي من الاختراعات تعتقد أنه سيصبح الأكثر استخداماً، ولماذا؟

 I think the headphones will become the most used because we need to communicate with people from different countries.

أعتقد أن سماعات الأذن ستصبح الأكثر استخداماً لأننا بحاجة للتواصل مع أشخاص من مختلف الدول.

 Which of the things do you think won't be used very much in Egypt? Why not?

أي من الأشياء تعتقد أنها لن تصبح مستخدمة بشكل كبير في مصر؟ ولماذا؟

 I agree that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather is fine.

أعتقد أنه لن يتم استخدام الجاكيت بشكل كبير لأن الجو رائع في مصر.

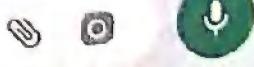
 What invention do you hope we will see in the future?

ما الاختراع التي تتعين أن تراه في المستقبل؟

 I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon.

أتمنى أن يتم اختراع الدراجة الطائرة قريباً جداً.

 Type a message



## Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

"Hadeer and Shady are talking about new inventions."

Hadeer : Hello, Shady.

Shady : Hi, Hadeer.

Hadeer : Do you agree that we will have more inventions in the future?

Shady : (1).....

Hadeer : (2)..... do you hope to see soon?

Shady : I hope to see (3).....

Hadeer : (4)..... ?

Shady : Because it can push you into the air at a speed of a fast car.

Hadeer : So, can you ride a motorbike?

Shady : (5).....



# Lessons 1 & 2

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

"Batool and Basmala are talking about life in the future."

**Batool** : What do you think life will be like in the future?

**Basmala** : I think we will have (1).....

**Batool** : What kind of inventions (2).....?

**Basmala** : Maybe we'll have a machine that can push you into the air.

**Batool** : (3)..... a helicopter?

**Basmala** : No. It's half-motorbike and half-helicopter!

**Batool** : How fast can it go?

**Basmala** : (4)..... into the air at the speed of a fast car!

**Batool** : Do you think everyone will have it?

**Basmala** : (5)..... Because it will be expensive at first.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1 This clever jacket uses an app to ..... you warmer.

- a) waste      b) save      c) take      d) make

2 My sister is very clever. She can do her homework ..... a few minutes.

- a) in      b) at      c) on      d) to

3 If more people shop online, there will be fewer cars ..... the road.

- a) of      b) at      c) on      d) in

4 My uncle called a good restaurant and ordered a meal. He's waiting for a .....

- a) delivery      b) choice      c) money      d) time

5 My father always works most of the day, so he has less ..... time.

- a) busy      b) free      c) full      d) expensive

6 Students should study hard to ..... their exams.

- a) wait      b) waste      c) save      d) pass

7 I think the flying motorbike will become the most ..... invention.

- a) use      b) using      c) used      d) uses

25

## UNIT 7

8 We won't go to the beach this weekend if it ..... very windy.

a) is                  b) will be                  c) was                  d) should be

9 If he is late, we ..... to go without him.

a) have                  b) will have                  c) has                  d) had

10 I hope they ..... build new roads in our city.

a) do                  b) are                  c) have                  d) will

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 What do you think cities ..... (be) like in the future?

2 I think Egypt ..... (win) the World Cup soon.

3 If I go to the shops, I ..... (spend) a lot of money.

4 I will do all my shopping online when I ..... (be) older.

### 4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

**"Online shopping"**

25

### Assess Your Progress

Dictation

General Exercises

Total Marks

Notes

30

25

55

:( ) :)

:( ) :)

:( ) :)

(1-15) (16-24) (25-30)

(1-12) (13-20) (21-25)

(1-25) (26-45) (46-55)

# Lessons 3&4

SB pages 6 - 8 WB pages 72 & 73



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3				
addicted	مدمٌ	expert	خبير	mistake خطأ
advice	نصيحة	headache	صداع	social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
check (ed)	يراجع/يفحص	horrible	رهيب/فظيع	take away يبعد
Lesson 4				
copy (n/v)	نسخة/ينسخ	lever	رافعة/عتلة/مقبض	suddenly فجأة
disappear (ed)	يخفى	model	نموذج	The Time Machine آلة الزمن
explore (d)	يستكشف	pull (ed)	يسحب/يشد/يجر	time travel السفر عبر الزمن
impossible	مستحيل	space	الفضاء	time traveller مسافر عبر الزمن

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3				
hobby	هواية	parents	الوالدين	يبدو مثل
online game	لعبة على الإنترنت	piece	جزء/قطعة	tired متعب/مرهق
Lesson 4				
believe (d)	يعتقد/يصدق	laugh (ed)	يضحك	reply (yied) يرد
group	مجموعة	only	فقط	wind رياح

# UNIT 7

## Language Expressions

## العبارات اللغوية

### Lesson 3

<b>become</b>	► a problem	تصبح مشكلة	<b>have</b>	► a break	يلاذ استراحة/فصححة
<b>feel</b>	► worried	يشعر بالقلق	<b>make</b>	► friends with	يكون صداقات مع
	► tired	يشعر بالتعب	<b>play</b>	► (video) games	يلعب ألعاب (فيديو)
<b>give</b>	► advice	يعطى نصيحة	<b>share</b>	► a photo	ينشر صورة
<b>have</b>	► a headache	لديه صداع	<b>watch</b>	► videos	يشاهد فيديوهات

### Lesson 4

<b>build/make</b>	► a machine	يبني آلة	<b>tidy</b>	► my bedroom	أرتب غرفتي
-------------------	-------------	----------	-------------	--------------	------------

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

### Lesson 3

<b>a problem with</b>	مشكلة في	<b>for a long time</b>	لمدة طويلة	<b>play on the computer</b>	يلعب على الكمبيوتر
<b>addicted to</b>	مدمٌ لـ	<b>go to bed</b>	ينذهب إلى الفراش	<b>sit at the computer</b>	يحليس على الكمبيوتر
<b>before bed</b>	قبل النوم	<b>on social media</b>	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	<b>talk (ed) to</b>	يتكلم إلى
<b>by mistake</b>	عن طريق الخطأ	<b>on the internet</b>	على الإنترنت	<b>worried about</b>	قلق على

### Lesson 4

<b>believe in</b>	يؤمن بـ	<b>go through</b> time/space	ينذهب عبر الزمن/الفضاء	<b>travel through</b> time/space	يسافر عبر الزمن/الفضاء
<b>for dinner</b>	علىوجبة العشاء	<b>ready to + inf.</b>	جاهز/مستعد لـ	<b>travel to the past/future</b>	يسافر إلى الماضي/المستقبل

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسيها

### Lesson 3

<b>good at</b>	جيد في	<b>bad at</b>	سيء في	<b>turn on</b>	يفتح (جهاز)
----------------	--------	---------------	--------	----------------	-------------

### Lesson 4

<b>appear</b>	يظهر	<b>disappear</b>	يختفي	<b>past</b>	الماضي
<b>inside</b>	داخل	<b>outside</b>	خارج	<b>possible</b>	ممكناً

## Conjugations of Irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

	Present	Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3	يُشعر	felt	felt
	يقول	said	said
	يجلس	sat	sat
	يأخذ	took	taken
	يُخبر	told	told
Lesson 4	يبني	built	built
	يقابل	met	met
	يبين / يعرض	showed	shown

## Language Notes

use + شئ + for + n/v. + ing

يستخدم لـ

- 1 • We use the pen for writing.

يشعر

feel + adj.

- 2 • I felt happy when I passed my exams.

يتوقف عن (فعل شئ ما)

stop + v. + ing

- 3 • You should stop watching too much TV.

يستقر

take + v. + to + inf.

- 4 • It took me two years to build the time machine.



## Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I usually take much time ..... my homework.

- a) to do      b) do      c) doing      d) to doing

2 We use phones ..... communicating with others.

- a) to      b) for      c) at      d) by

3 Students should stop ..... their time.

- a) to waste      b) wasting      c) to wasting      d) waste

## Write it right



## How to write about problems with technology

**كيف تكتب عن المشاكل التي تسببها التكنولوجيا**

Technology has made life much better and easier.

**It's hard/ difficult to live without technology.**

Many people start facing problems when they use technology for a long time.

We can call it "technology addiction".

Most people are addicted to (الهاتف / الموبايل / الكمبيوتر).

They spend too much time using (الجوال).

This may cause (ischaemia).

We can see some horrible things on social media.

### Example

## Problems with technology

**Problems with technology**

Technology has made life much better and easier. It is hard to live without modern technology such as the internet, mobile phones, video games and other technological wonders. Sadly, many people start facing many problems when they use technology for a long time. We can call it 'technology addiction'. Most young people are addicted to their phones. They spend too much time using social media. They also spend a long time playing video games online. Many people are addicted to using the internet for a long time. This may cause headaches for them. We can see some horrible things on social media.

### **Check Point:**

**Write a paragraph about a problem you face because of technology**

## **"The problem I face because of technology"**

## Lesson 3



## Listening Text

## Pre-listening question:

- What are your problems with new technology?

**2. Listen to these four people talking about the problems they have with technology.**

**SB page 6**

**Narrator : Shady**

**Shady** : I'm not sleeping very well at the moment. I usually watch some videos on the internet before I go to sleep but sometimes I watch them for a few hours and then I can't sleep. My head often hurts<sup>(1)</sup> lots in the morning, too.



يؤلم (1)

عبر الانترنت (2)

يتكلف (3)

يأمل (4)

موقع التواصل الاجتماعي (5)

يفحص (6)

مضحك (7)

يشترك (8)

غريب (9)

**Narrator : Hala**

**Hala** : I found this great online<sup>(2)</sup> game but I didn't know that when I got new things on it, it costs<sup>(3)</sup> real money! I hope<sup>(4)</sup> my parents aren't going to be angry when I tell them how much money I spent.



**Narrator : Randa**

**Randa** : I love social media<sup>(5)</sup>, I love watching videos online and I love talking to my friends on my phone. But now I feel worried if I don't have my phone or I can't check<sup>(6)</sup> it. I think it is starting to become a problem.



**Narrator : Adam**

**Adam** : My friends and I like to put funny<sup>(7)</sup> pictures online but when I share<sup>(8)</sup> a photo, everyone says my clothes are not cool or my hair looks strange<sup>(9)</sup>. It makes me feel sad.



**Post-listening question:** - What does Randa like doing on the internet?

**Pre-reading question:**

- Would you like to travel in time? Where would you like to go? Why?

**2. Read part of the story *The Time Machine* and answer the questions. SB page 8**

**The Time Machine<sup>(1)</sup>**

by H. G. Wells

London, England, 1895

A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house. After dinner, the Time Traveller<sup>(2)</sup> asks his friends if they think that it is possible to travel through time.



"It's impossible<sup>(3)</sup>!" they reply, "We can only travel through space<sup>(4)</sup>, not time."

The Time Traveller shows them a small model of a machine that he has in his hand.

"This is a copy of a machine that I believe<sup>(5)</sup> can go through time. It took me two years to build," he tells them. The friends laugh.

"Pull<sup>(6)</sup> this lever<sup>(7)</sup>," he tells one of them.

They feel some wind and then the machine suddenly disappears<sup>(8)</sup>!

"Where is it?" the other men ask.

"The model machine is in the future," the Time Traveller says. "Would you like to see the real machine?" he asks.

He takes them to another room. Inside the room is another, bigger machine. It is not finished.

"In this machine," he says "I will explore<sup>(9)</sup> the past and the future!"

**Post-reading questions:**

1. What would the Time Traveller do with the time machine?
2. How long did he take to build this machine?

أله الزمن (1)

مسافر عبر الزمن (2)

مستحيل (3)

القضاء (4)

يؤمن/يعتقد (5)

يسحب/يجريشد (6)

رافعة/مقبض (7)

يختفي (8)

يستكشف (9)

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Most young people are ..... to using the internet. They use it too much.  
 a) comfortable      b) busy      c) addicted      d) happy
- 2 I took Adel's book ..... mistake.  
 a) by      b) at      c) in      d) on
- 3 He uses the computer well, so people see him a/an .....  
 a) expert      b) teacher      c) worker      d) doctor
- 4 I have a ..... when I watch too much TV.  
 a) social media      b) mistake      c) headache      d) headphone
- 5 He is very sad because his friends say ..... things about him.  
 a) happy      b) horrible      c) comfortable      d) afraid
- 6 Many people use social ..... to communicate with each other.  
 a) media      b) internet      c) headphone      d) invention
- 7 I can't use my mobile phone because there is a problem ..... it.  
 a) on      b) with      c) for      d) in
- 8 I always ..... photos on Facebook.  
 a) chair      b) sure      c) share      d) shore
- 9 I can't find my toy. I think it ..... somewhere.  
 a) hid      b) felt      c) disappeared      d) dropped
- 10 Many scientists want to ..... many places in the world.  
 a) invent      b) communicate      c) explore      d) make
- 11 My parents advise me not to ..... friends with bad people.  
 a) make      b) do      c) spend      d) stay
- 12 You should take a ..... after long work.  
 a) brake      b) break      c) brick      d) beak
- 13 My father wanted to take my tablet ..... because I use it for a long time.  
 a) away      b) out      c) off      d) up
- 14 My friend thinks it's ..... to answer this question as it's very hard for me.  
 a) possible      b) impossible      c) comfortable      d) uncomfortable
- 15 You should have a ..... of important papers in a safe place.  
 a) drawing      b) painting      c) copy      d) picture



## Language

### Giving advice

اعطاء النصيحة

**Subject** (ينبغي أن) المصدر + الفاعل + **should**

- You **should eat** more vegetables.
- You **should turn** your mobile off while sleeping.

**Subject** (ينبغي الا) المصدر + الفاعل + **shouldn't**

- You **shouldn't smoke**.
- Children **shouldn't eat** a lot of sweets.

يمكن استخدام (**should**) مع (**if/when**) عند إعطاء نصيحة كالتالي:

If/When + present simple مضارع بسيط, subject + **should/shouldn't + inf.**

- If you **see** people being horrible online, you **should tell** your parents.
- You **should check** that you can't buy anything **when** you **play** games online.
- If you **have** a problem, you **should ask** your father for help.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You should revise well when you ..... (**had**) an exam.

2. When you go to bed, you ..... (**shouldn't**) turn your phone off.



### Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He should study more ..... he wants to pass his exam.
  - a) if
  - b) after
  - c) before
  - d) unless
- When someone helps you, you ..... "thank you".
  - a) may say
  - b) say
  - c) will say
  - d) should say
- What ..... I do if I don't stop playing so much on the computer?
  - a) should
  - b) would
  - c) did
  - d) were

## Language Exercises

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

WB

- 1 If you want to get to the park quickly, you ..... the bus.  
a) will take      b) take      c) should take      d) took
- 2 She's always tired. She ..... go to bed late every night.  
a) shouldn't      b) should      c) has      d) hasn't
- 3 You ..... eat some fruit or vegetables every day.  
a) do      b) don't      c) shouldn't      d) should
- 4 The students ..... use their mobile phones in the exam.  
a) shouldn't      b) should      c) have      d) haven't
- 5 You should ask the teacher to help you if you ..... the lesson.  
a) understand      b) don't understand  
c) will understand      d) won't understand
- 6 People shouldn't ..... fast in the city centre.  
a) driven      b) driving      c) drove      d) drive
- 7 You have a great job. You ..... change it.  
a) are      b) should      c) shouldn't      d) aren't
- 8 ..... leave now?  
a) Should we      b) We should  
c) We shouldn't      d) Should
- 9 Do you think ..... take this job?  
a) I should      b) should I  
c) should      d) shouldn't



**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1 Children shouldn't ..... (drinking) sugary drinks. It's not very healthy.
- 2 I should ..... (eats) more vegetables, but I hate them.
- 3 ..... (While) you have a problem, you should tell your parents.
- 4 Children shouldn't ..... (talking) to strangers.
- 5 If it ..... (be) rainy, you should take an umbrella.

## Speaking

## Discussing new technology

مناقشة التكنولوجيا الحديثة

## Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

## Response

جملة الرد

**Adam:** What types of technology do you use every day?  
ما أنواع التكنولوجيا التي تستخدمها كل يوم؟  
**Randa:** I often use my mobile phone, laptop and the headphones.  
استخدم الهاتف المحمول واللاب توب وسماعات الأذن.  
**Adam:** What do you use them for?  
فيما تستخدمهم؟  
**Randa:** I use them to log on the internet and for music.  
استخدمهم للدخول على الإنترنت وللموسيقى.  
**Adam:** Which is the most important piece of technology for you?  
ما هي أهم قطعة تكنولوجيا لديك؟  
**Randa:** I think I'm addicted to my mobile phone.  
أعتقد بأنني مدمى لهاتفي المحمول.

## Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

**"Adam and Randa are talking about technology".****Adam :** Hello Randa. Can I ask you some questions?**Randa :** (1).....**Adam :** (2)..... do you use every day?**Randa :** I always use my mobile phone.**Adam :** (3)..... use it for?**Randa :** I use it to surf the internet.**Adam :** What problems do you have with technology?**Randa :** I think I'm addicted to (4).....**Adam :** How?**Randa :** I spend hours on (5).....

# Lessons 3 & 4

## General Exercises

1

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

4

1 What's your hobby?

- a) Playing video games.
- c) Football.

b) Tennis.

d) Watching TV.

2 Who do you play with?

- a) My brothers.
- c) My mother.

b) My sisters.

d) My friends.

3 What will your parents take away?

- a) My tablet.
- c) My computer.

b) My mobile.

d) My bag.

4 How do you spend your time?

- a) Offline.
- c) Outside.

b) Online.

d) At the library.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1 I usually meet my father ..... dinner.

- a) on
- b) for
- c) into

d) of

2 Is it possible to travel ..... time?

- a) at
- b) on
- c) through

d) for

3 Farmers use donkeys and horses to ..... their things.

- a) push
- b) pull
- c) fall

d) feel

4 When I visited London, I bought a ..... of the Big Ben clock.

- a) model
- b) medal
- c) metal

d) machine

5 I am always ..... to help my mum at home. I'm very helpful.

- a) busy
- b) ready
- c) real

d) sad

6 Most people don't ..... in time travel.

- a) think
- b) talk
- c) say

d) believe

7 My mother always asks me to ..... my bedroom.

- a) tidy
- b) drop
- c) wash

d) make

37

**UNIT 7**

- 8 I have a party tonight. What should I .....?  
 a) wear      b) wears      c) wearing      d) wore
- 9 Children should eat lots of vegetables, but they ..... eat lots of sweets.  
 a) should      b) shouldn't      c) have      d) haven't
- 10 They have a test tomorrow. They ..... go to the cinema.  
 a) are      b) should      c) shouldn't      d) aren't

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1 Should I drink hot tea if I ..... (has) a headache?
- 2 If your tooth ..... (hurt), you should go to the dentist's.
- 3 He should see a doctor when he ..... (feel) ill.
- 4 You shouldn't ..... (drinking) so much coffee. It's bad for you.

**4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Nour to tell her about technology and its problems. Your name is Yasmine. Your email address is yasmine@gmail.com and your friend's email address is nour@gmail.com.**

24

**Assess Your Progress**

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	24	54	
(1-15) (16-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-24)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-54)	

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 9 - 11 WB pages 74 - 76



## Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

#### Key Vocabulary

##### Lesson 5

damage (d)

يdemر/يضر

exercises

تمارين رياضية

danger

خطر

eye problems

مشاكل العين

dangerous

خطير

hearing

السمع

debate

مناظرة

screen

شاشة

ear problems

مشاكل الأذن

sleep (n)

النوم

enough

كافٍ

text (ed)

يرسل رسالة نصية

##### Lesson 6

improve (d)

يحسن

robot

إنسان آلي

order (ed)

يطلب/يأمر

surname

لقب العائلة

#### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

##### Lesson 5

expressions

تعبرات

health

صحة

موسيقى عالية/اصاخبة

headings

عنوانين

healthy

صحي/بصحة جيدة

poster

ملصق إعلاني

##### Lesson 6

flying car

سيارة طائرة

ill people

المرضى

person

شخص

How often

كم مرة

mobile phone

هاتف محمول

title

عنوان (كتاب/مقال)

## UNIT 7

### Language Expressions

### العبارات اللغوية

#### Lesson 5

<b>addicted to</b>	يصبح مدمن على
<b>become ▶ more healthy</b>	تصبح بصحة أفضل
<b>check ▶ social media</b>	يتفقد موقع التواصل الاجتماعي
<b>damage ▶ your hearing</b>	يسبب ضرراً لحاسة السمع
<b>do ▶ exercises</b>	يمارس التمارين الرياضية

<b>get</b>	<b>a headache</b>	يصاب بصداع
<b>give</b>	<b>enough sleep</b>	يحصل على قسط كافٍ من النوم
<b>have</b>	<b>somebody a headache</b>	يسبب صداع
<b>spend</b>	<b>a problem</b>	لديه مشكلة
	<b>a lot of time</b>	بعض الكثير من الوقت

#### Lesson 6

<b>give ▶ a title</b>	يعطى عنوان
<b>go ▶ online</b>	يتصل بالإنترنت
<b>look ▶ interesting</b>	يبدو شيئاً
<b>once an hour</b>	مرة واحدة كل ساعة
<b>wear ▶ headphones</b>	يرتدي سماعات الرأس

<b>Yours faithfully</b>	تقضوا بقبول فائق الاحترام
<b>Yours sincerely</b>	المخلص لكم
<b>Best Wishes</b>	أطيب الأمانى
<b>Kind Regards</b>	أطيب التحيات

### Prepositions

### حروف الجر

#### Lesson 5

<b>bring to</b>	يجلب إلى/إلى
<b>good/bad for</b>	مفيدة/ضارـة
<b>in my opinion</b>	في رأيـي
<b>from my point of view</b>	من وجهـة نظرـي
<b>late into the night</b>	في وقت متأخرـ من الليلـ

<b>listen to</b>	يستطيعـ إلى
<b>on screens</b>	على الشاشـات
<b>positive/negative for</b>	إيجابـيـ سلبيـ لـ
<b>through headphones</b>	من خـلال سماعـات الرأسـ

#### Lesson 6

<b>change for</b>	يغير بشـيءـ جـديـد
<b>go on holiday</b>	يذهبـ في إجازـة

<b>think of/about</b>	يذكرـ يعتقدـ فيـ
<b>write down</b>	يدونـ

**Words and Opposites****الكلمات وعکسها**

Lesson 5					
remember	يُتذَكِّر	forget	يُنسَى	dangerous	خطير
bad	ضار	good	مفيدة	positive	إيجابي

Lesson 6					
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي	start	يبدأ
interesting	شيق	boring/uninteresting	الممل / غير شيق	damage	يتلف

**Conjugations of irregular verbs****تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة**

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 5			
bring	يجلب/يحضر	brought	brought
Lesson 6			
know	يعرف	knew	known
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought
wear	يرتدى/يلبس	wore	worn
write	يكتب	wrote	written

ALADWAA

**تطبيق الأضواء****ذاكر دروسك**

الآن بطريقة تفاعلية من خلال  
فيديوهات شرح الدروس.



حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

www.aladwaa.com

## Write it right

### How to write about shopping online

كيف تكتب عن التسوق عبر الانترنت

- Some people prefer shopping online, but others don't prefer it.
- Most people think that online shopping is great because (أسباب تفضيل الأشخاص للتسوق عبر الانترنت)
- When people shop online, they can (مميزات التسوق عبر الانترنت)
- Old people can do all their shopping online
- Other people don't like online shopping because (أسباب عدم تفضيل البعض للتسوق عبر الانترنت)
- They prefer going to (الأماكن التي يفضلون الذهاب إليها)
- At a shop, they can (ما يستطيعون فعله في المحلات)

### Writing tips

• عند بداية الرسالة يمكن استخدام ما يلى:  
إذا كنت لا تعرف اسم المرسل إليه

1. Dear Sir/Madam
2. Dear Mr/Mrs/Ms + لقب العائلة

• عند نهاية الرسالة يمكن استخدام ما يلى:  
إذا كنت لا تعرف اسم المرسل إليه

1. Yours faithfully
2. Yours sincerely
3. Best Wishes/Kind Regards

إذا كنت تعرف المرسل إليه جيداً

From : maged@student.com  
To : amgd@student.com  
Subject : Online shopping  
Dear Amgd,



How are you and your family? I want to tell you about online shopping. Some people prefer shopping online, but others don't prefer it. Most people think that online shopping is great. It saves time. People don't need to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy the things they want in a few minutes. They have more choices online. If more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Old people can do all their shopping online. On the other hand, other people don't like online shopping. They prefer going to real shops. At a shop, they can see what they are buying and they can try it first. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery. They think that if everyone shops online, many shops will close. If they close, then lots of other businesses like cafés will close, too. Do you have any experience with online shopping?

Best wishes.

Maged.

### Check Point:

Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Omar to tell him about a problem with an online delivery. Your name is Moataz and your email address is moataz@gmail.com and your friend's email address is omar@gmail.com.

## Lesson 5



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:**

- Have you ever had a health problem because you spend much time on the internet?

**2. Look at the headings in the poster. What problems could technology bring to these things?**

SB page 9

**The dangers<sup>(1)</sup> of technology**

**Sleep:** Many people **text<sup>(2)</sup>**, check social media or watch videos online late into the night. Then they don't get enough sleep.



**Eye problems<sup>(3)</sup>:** If you spend a lot of time on screens, you can have eye problems and headaches.



**Ear problems<sup>(4)</sup>:** Listening to loud music or films through headphones can **damage<sup>(5)</sup>** your **hearing<sup>(6)</sup>**.



**Exercise<sup>(7)</sup>:** Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV and don't spend enough time outside doing exercise.



مخاطر (1)

يرسل رسالة نصية (2)

مشاكل العين (3)

مشاكل الأذن (4)

يدمر / يضر (5)

السمع (6)

تمارين رياضية (7)

**Post-reading questions:**

1. Technology sometimes has a bad effect on our health. How can it happen?
2. What's your advice for the people who spend most of their time using social media?

## Lesson 6



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:**

- Have you ever shopped online? If yes, what did you buy?

**1. Read the email. What is it about?**

SB page 10



**Dear Sir/Madam,**

I ordered<sup>(1)</sup> a new mobile phone last week and the delivery<sup>(2)</sup> was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged<sup>(3)</sup>. I would like to change the phone for a new one that is not damaged. Can you tell me how I can do this?



Yours faithfully<sup>(4)</sup>,

**Lama Sabri**

(1) طلب

(2) توصيل / تسليم

(3) تلف

(4) تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام

**Post-reading questions:**

1. What was the problem with the phone?
2. If you faced the same problem, what would you do?

## Lesson 6



## Reading Text

**1. Read the email and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places. WB page 75**

**Dear Sir/Madam,**

I ordered a new game last week on your website. **The delivery was today.** When I opened the box, I found that I ordered a game for children aged 6-9 by mistake. **It did not say this on your website.** I was not happy about this because I want to play the game with my friends, and we are all 13 or 14.

I would like to change the game for a new one that is for the correct age. **Can you tell me how I can do this?**

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

**Haytham Shabana**

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Many young people spend much time ..... their social media.  
 a) checking      b) looking      c) playing      d) wasting
- 2 Watching too much TV has many .....  
 a) dangerousness      b) dangerously      c) dangerous      d) dangers
- 3 Spending a lot of time on the internet is very .....  
 a) dangerousness      b) dangerously      c) dangerous      d) dangers
- 4 Too much wind can ..... many trees and other things.  
 a) repair      b) damage      c) save      d) encourage
- 5 The screen of my phone was ..... two days ago. I want a new one.  
 a) damaged      b) aged      c) found      d) saved
- 6 My mobile fell and the ..... was broken. I can't see things on it well.  
 a) speaker      b) charger      c) headphone      d) screen
- 7 My older brother went to England to ..... his English. He wanted to speak it well.  
 a) prove      b) check      c) improve      d) damage
- 8 Everyone should ..... enough sleep at night to feel better the next morning.  
 a) keep      b) make      c) save      d) get
- 9 Social media has a ..... effect on us, so we should be careful.  
 a) positive      b) negative      c) useful      d) helpful
- 10 We should be careful about the food we eat to stay .....  
 a) ill      b) health      c) healthy      d) illness
- 11 Many people use mobile phones to ..... other people quickly.  
 a) text      b) send      c) talk      d) speak
- 12 I think people will go ..... holiday to space.  
 a) from      b) in      c) on      d) at
- 13 Using a mobile phone too much can ..... you headaches.  
 a) give      b) get      c) make      d) do
- 14 When you use a mobile phone too much, you can ..... headaches.  
 a) give      b) get      c) make      d) do


**Speaking**
**Talking about positives and negatives of technology**
**التحدث عن إيجابيات وسلبيات التكنولوجيا**
**Situation**
**ما يقال في هذا الموقف**
**Response**
**جملة الرد**

 .... is a good idea. * "Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea."	 يكون فكرة جيدة. * "Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea."
 From my point of view, ..... * "From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches."	 من وجهة نظرى. * "From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches."
 It isn't a good idea to + inf. * "It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV or playing on computers."	 إنها ليست فكرة جيدة أن. * "It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV or playing on computers."
 If + فاعل, subject + will/won't + inf. * "If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine."	 في رأيي. * "If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine."
 In my opinion, ..... * "In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health."	 في رأيي. * "In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health."
 If + فاعل, subject + should/shouldn't + inf. * "If you use technology well, it should help you become more healthy."	 في رأيي. * "If you use technology well, it should help you become more healthy."

Type a message

Send

## Speaking Exercise

**Complete the following dialogue:**

1 "Rasha and Rania are talking about the effects of social media on our health".

Rasha : You're always tired these days. Why?

Rania : I don't know, but I always have headaches.

Rasha : (1) ..... use your mobile phone a lot?

Rania : Of course, yes.

Rasha : (2) ..... social media?

Rania : I check it once an hour.

Rasha : It isn't (3) ..... to spend too much time using it.

Rania : But using technology to help me get more information is a good idea.

Rasha : From my (4) ..... , all technology is bad for your health.

Rania : If you use technology well, (5) ..... you become healthier.

2 "Hanan and Lama are talking about computer games."

Hanan : Hello Lama.

Lama : Hi Hanan.

Hanan : (1) ..... think that all computer games are bad

for you, Lama?

Lama : (2) ..... , not all computer games are bad. Some of them can help you to learn things.

Hanan : (3) ..... . If you don't play computer games all the time, it shouldn't be a problem.

Lama : It's not (4) ..... to play games late at night though.

Hanan : I agree that playing games at night stops you sleeping.

Lama : (5) ..... playing quiet, calm games in the evening?

Hanan : If you only play games that teach you things in the evening, it should be fine.

Lama : You're right.

# Lessons 5 & 6

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

"Ziad and Baher are talking about making good friends."

**Ziad** : So, do you have lots of friends?

**Baher** : I guess so.

**Ziad** : What (1)..... think makes a good friend?

**Baher** : (2)....., a good friend helps you when you have a problem.

**Ziad** : Do you think that's the most important thing?

**Baher** : Yes, friends help each other. Helping your friend with his problem is a (3).....

**Ziad** : Well, (4)..... help you with?

**Baher** : He helps me with my study at school.

**Ziad** : If you're good friends, you should help each other then.

**Baher** : (5)..... a good idea to live without a friend.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 ..... music can harm your hearing.

- a) Law      b) Low      c) Load      d) Loud

2 I ..... a new mobile phone last week.

- a) ordered      b) offered      c) saved      d) improved

3 Many people like to hear songs ..... headphones.

- a) by      b) through      c) at      d) for

4 If you don't tell your parents about your exam result, it will ..... a big problem.

- a) get      b) have      c) give      d) become

5 ..... my opinion, all technology is bad for our health.

- a) In      b) On      c) At      d) By

6 My teacher is Mr Said Darahem. Darahem is his .....

- a) address      b) first name      c) surname      d) age

7 If you spend a lot of time ..... screens, you can have eye problems.

- a) with      b) by      c) at      d) on

8 I think people won't ..... on holiday to space.

- a) gone      b) went      c) going      d) go

- 9 When you feel tired, you ..... see a doctor.  
 a) should      b) will      c) have      d) do
- 10 I ..... watch TV tonight if I don't finish my homework.  
 a) don't      b) won't      c) aren't      d) haven't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 If you ..... (be) on the computer for three hours, you should have a break.
- 2 If you don't do any exercise, you ..... (not/be) healthy.
- 3 When Nermeen ..... (travel) to India, she'll visit the Tag Mahal.
- 4 If everyone ..... (shop) online, the shops in our towns will close.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Essam to tell him about your problems with new technology. Your name is Said. Your email address is said@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is essam@hotmail.com.

4

6

25

### Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	
(1-15) (16-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-25)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-55)	



## Video Script

**Narrator:** What do you use when you want to find out the time? Do you use a watch ... or do you use a clock? These clocks either use numbers to tell the time... or they use hands. These hands show hours<sup>(1)</sup>, minutes<sup>(2)</sup> and seconds<sup>(3)</sup>.

ساعات (1)

دقائق (2)

ثوانی (3)

الساعة الشخصية (4)

موقع (5)

دمشق (6)

اتجاهات (7)

تابع/مفقود (8)

ميزة/خاص (9)

But how did people know the time in the past? In Ancient Egypt, people used sundials<sup>(4)</sup>. Sundials use the position<sup>(5)</sup> of the sun to tell the time. Then, in the year 1524, a scientist from Damascus<sup>(6)</sup> called Taqi al-Din invented a watch that looked like the watches of today. It had three hands to show hours, minutes and seconds. It was also small, so people could carry it with them.

But watches today don't only tell you the time. Some watches will say that you should do exercise if you are sitting at a computer for a long time!

And some have apps, such as maps, that will give you directions<sup>(7)</sup> if you are lost<sup>(8)</sup>.

What will the watches of the future be like? Some will be like modern mobile phones. If someone calls you, you will be able to see them on a special<sup>(9)</sup> video screen.

And some will look after your health. They will tell you what medicine you should take if you are ill, or that you should see a doctor.



# Unit 7 Review

## Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

#### Key Vocabulary

addicted	مدمٌ	explore (d)	يستكشف	prefer (red)	يفضل
app	تطبيق	eye problems	مشاكل العين	pull (ed)	يسحب/يشد/يجر
businesses	اعمال تجارية	future	مستقبل	push (ed)	يدفع
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	headache	صداع	robot	إنسان آل
change (d)	يغير	headphones	سماعات الرأس	save (d)	يوفّر/يدخر/ينقذ
check (ed)	يفحص/يراجع	hearing	السمع	screen	شاشة
choice	اختيار	helicopter	طائرة عمودية/هليكوبتر	shop (ped) online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت
clever jacket	سترة ذكية	horrible	رهيب/فظيع	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
copy	نسخة	impossible	مستحيل	solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
damage (d)	يدمر/يضر	improve (d)	يحسن	space	الفضاء
danger	خطر	invent (ed)	يخترع	speed	سرعة
dangerous	خطير	invention	اختراع	suddenly	فجأة
delivery	توصيل/تسليم	lever	رافعة/عتلة/مقبض	surname	لقب العائلة
disappear (ed)	يختفي	model	نموذج	take away	يبعد/يسلب
ear problems	مشاكل الأذن	motorbike	دراجة نارية	technology	التكنولوجيا
electricity	كهرباء	online shopping	التسوق عبر الإنترنت	text (ed)	يرسل رسالة نصية
exercise	تمارين رياضية	order	يطلب/يأمر	time traveller	مسافر عبر الزمن
expert	خبير	pollution	تلويث	translate (d)	يترجم



## Language

### The future with "will"

Subject + الفاعل will ('ll) + inf.

- We will travel to England next week.
- My father will not come late tonight.
- The new bikes will be very useful for travelling.

If/When + present simple, subject + will/won't + inf.  
Subject + will/won't + inf. + if/when + present simple

- If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.
- I will do all my shopping online when I am older.



## Speaking

### 1. Discussing new inventions

- Which of the things do you think won't be used very much in Egypt? Why not?
  - I agree that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather is fine.

### 2. Discussing new technology

- What types of technology do you use every day?
  - I often use my mobile phone, laptop and the headphones.

### 3. Talking about positives and negatives of technology

- Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea.
- From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.
- It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV or playing on computers.
- If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine.
- In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health.
- If you use technology well, it should help you become more healthy.

**1)** Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) **Omar:** What invention do you hope we will see in the future?

**Naira:** .....

B) **Sarah:** .....

**Samira:** In my opinion, too much technology can give you headaches.

**2)** Match column A with column B:

**A**

1. If you don't become addicted to technology,
2. I check social media
3. When I opened the box,
4. From my point of view, too much technology
5. I would like to change

**B**

- a) once an hour.
- b) can give you headaches.
- c) the phone for a new one.
- d) you will be fine.
- e) Can you tell me how I can do this?
- f) the screen was damaged.

**Answers:** 1. ( )      2. ( )      3. ( )      4. ( )      5. ( )

**3)** Write an email of about (5) sentences to your friend, Sameh to tell him about modern technology. Your name is Amir.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 1

Based on Unit 7

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ١ What did Lama buy?  
a) A mobile phone.    b) A tablet.    c) A camera.    d) A computer.
- ٢ When did she order it?  
a) Last year.    b) Last month.    c) Last week.    d) Today.
- ٣ What happened to the screen?  
a) Lost.    b) Damaged.    c) Saved.    d) Flown.
- ٤ What did she do?  
a) Phoned the shop.    b) Wrote a letter.    c) Sent an email.    d) Nothing.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

4

## 2 Complete the following dialogue:

"Hend and Huda are talking about the screen of the mobile".

Hend: You look sad! What's the matter?

5

Huda: My mobile screen (1).....

Hend: (2).....?

Huda: When I opened the box, it was damaged.

Hend: (3).....?

Huda: I ordered it last week.

Hend: When was the delivery?

Huda: It was today. What should I do?

Hend: (4)..... an email to them.

Huda: (5)..... your advice.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

6

Technology affects the way we communicate, learn, and think. It helps people to communicate with each other daily. Technology plays an important role in the society today. It has positive and negative effects on the world and daily lives. It improves businesses. It saves our time. We can shop online.

On the other hand, it has negative impacts. People don't get enough sleep. They spend too much time checking social media or watching videos online late into the night. Spending too much time on screens causes you headaches. Spending a long time in the same place can cause back and neck pain.

Children sometimes overuse technology in the classroom which affects the learning in a negative way. They use their mobiles and tablets to play online games for a long time and to check their social media.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1 Suggest a title for the passage.
  
- 2 What are the positive things of technology?
  
- 3 What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4 The underlined word "overuse" means to use ..... .
 

a) too little	b) too much
c) once a week	d) every day
  
- 5 Sitting for a long time can cause ..... .
 

a) eye problems	b) a headache
c) back and neck pain	d) damage
  
- 6 Because of using technology late into night, people don't get ..... sleep.
 

a) little	b) much
c) less	d) any

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 This ..... jacket uses an app to make you warmer.
 

a) boring	b) ugly	c) stupid	d) clever
-----------	---------	-----------	-----------
  
- 2 That machine can push you into the air ..... the speed of a fast car.
 

a) at	b) to	c) by	d) for
-------	-------	-------	--------
  
- 3 I spent lots of money in an online game ..... .
 

a) by mistake	b) addicted to
c) offline	d) through headaches
  
- 4 The tap has a ..... to get hot and cold water.
 

a) lever	b) bag	c) hand	d) leg
----------	--------	---------	--------
  
- 5 I would like to ..... a machine to tidy my bedroom.
 

a) pull	b) discover	c) invent	d) invite
---------	-------------	-----------	-----------
  
- 6 We don't spend enough time ..... exercise.
 

a) staying	b) doing	c) making	d) wasting
------------	----------	-----------	------------
  
- 7 These headphones translate any languages ..... your language.
 

a) with	b) into	c) at	d) on
---------	---------	-------	-------

8 I think it ..... probably rain tomorrow.

a) does

b) is

c) has

d) will

9 If I lend you my notes, I won't ..... revise tonight.

a) able

b) be able

c) able to

d) be able to

10 We'll win if we ..... well.

a) play

b) plays

c) played

d) playing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 If we ..... (be) free, we'll go with you.

2 When your father comes, we ..... (go) out together.

3 If you ..... (not/do) any exercise, you won't be healthy.

4 If you are worried about something online, you ..... (tell) someone.

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

**"Advantages and disadvantages of online shopping"**

WB

6

# Unit 7

# Research Projects



## 1. Online shopping

Do research on "Online shopping".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- Are you for or against online shopping? Why?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of online shopping?
- How can online shopping be useful for old people?
- In your opinion, what will happen if we all shop online and stop going to the shops?



## 2. Technology

Do research on "Technology".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What types of technology do you use every day? What do you use them for?
- What is the most important piece of technology for you? Why?
- What are your problems with technology?
- Why do people always say that technology is a double-edged weapon?
- Compare between life with technology and without technology.
- Don't forget to mention how people lived in the past.



### Research steps

- 1 ➤ A suitable title
- 2 ➤ An introduction
- 3 ➤ Main ideas and information
- 4 ➤ Results
- 5 ➤ Resources



# ALAWA OASIS



## New Inventions:

Imagine that you are an inventor. What would you invent?



Draw a picture of your invention:

Give us more information about  
your new invention:



## Unit 8 You are what you eat

### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** : Texts about what people eat; a healthy food quiz; a recipe; an article about unusual food; an article about a healthy island

**Writing** : An email about a favourite snack; a paragraph about a country's diet; a paragraph about sleep

**Listening** : A discussion about favourite snacks; a conversation at dinner; teenagers sharing their worries about food and health

**Speaking** : Describing food; offering, accepting and refusing food politely; giving advice about being healthy

**Language** : a lot, a little and a few

**Life Skills** : Self-management



Tapescript

تشير لأسئلة المتمرين



تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

SB

تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

WB

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 12 - 15 WB pages 77 & 78

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1					
fat	دهون	spices	توابل/ بهارات	sugar	سكر
fava beans	حبوب الفول	salt	ملح	taste	ذائق

### Snacks وجبات خفيفة

Snack	وجبة خفيفة	Feature	السمة/الصفة	Country	دولة/بلد
sfenj	البسنخ (كعكة مقلية محلية)	sweet	حلو	Morocco	المغرب
samosa	سمبوسة	spicy	حار/متبل	India	الهند
chips	رقائق بطاطس محمصة/شيشي	popular	محبوب/شعبي/شائع	Britain	بريطانيا
rojak	روjak/سلطنة حضارة وفواكه	juicy fruit	فاكهة كثيرة العصير	Malaysia	ماليزيا
falafel	فلافل/ طعمية	delicious vegetable	خضار لذيذ	Egypt	مصر

### Adjectives for food صفات تستخدم للطعام

delicious	لذيذ	juicy	كثير العصير	spicy	حار/متبل
hot	حار/ساخن	salty	مالح	sweet	ملو

### Lesson 2

allergic (to)	لديه حساسية (من)	kitchen	مطبخ	plate	طبق
athletics practice	تدريب ألعاب القوى	lucky	محظوظ	squash	باناضة الاسكواش
athletics team	فريق ألعاب القوى	netball	كرة الشبكة	teenager	مراهق
energy	طاقة	nuts	مكسرات		
fast food	طعام سريع	offer (ed)	يعرض/ يقدم	type	نوع

## Additional Vocabulary

## المفردات الإضافية

## Lesson 1

bread	خبز	favourite	مفضل	research results	نتائج البحث
chip shop	متجر الرقائق	hawawshi	دواوشي	resources	موارد/مصادر
chocolate	شوكولاتة	meat	لحم	though	بالرغم من
cook (ed)	يطهى/يطبخ	oven	فرن	thirsty	عطشان
describe (d)	يصف	quiz	اختبار/مسابقة	watermelon	بطيخ

## Lesson 2

all day	طوال اليوم	invite (d)	يدعو	prefer (red)	يفضل
cake	كيك/كعك	juice	عصير	rice pudding	أرز بلبن (بودنج)
chicken	لحم الدجاج	need (ed)	يحتاج إلى	salad	السلطة
coffee	قهوة	olives	زيتون	sandwich	ساندويتش
grapes	عنبر	pasta	مكرونة	sweets	حلوى
however	ومع ذلك	pizza	بيتزا	touch (ed)	يلمس

## Language Expressions

## التعابير اللغوية

## Lesson 1

get	▶ home	يصل إلى البيت
have	▶ a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة

make ▶ falafel يصنع الطعمية/الفلافل

## Lesson 2

do	▶ the washing up	يفسّل الأطباق
get	▶ food	يحضر طعاماً
	▶ ill	يمرض
give	▶ energy/power	يعطى طاقة

go	▶ running	ينذهب للجري
have	▶ a rest	يأخذ قسطاً من الراحة
invite	▶ friends to	يدعو الأصدقاء لـ
make	▶ an offer	يقدم عرضاً

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

<b>Lesson 1</b>			
a cup of	كوب من	in different parts of في أجزاء مختلفة من	put (something) on بضع (شيئنا) على
ask to + inf.	يطلب	put (something) into يضع (شيئنا) داخل/في	thanks for شكراً على
<b>Lesson 2</b>			
an example of	مثال على	for most of the time في معظم الأوقات	on the way home في الطريق إلى البيت
at home	في البيت	need to + inf. يحتاج أن	for breakfast على وجبة الإفطار
at my house	في منزلي	on the athletics team في فريق ألعاب القوى	with nuts بالمكسرات

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعکسها

<b>Lesson 1</b>					
countable	معدود	uncountable غير معدود	plural	جمع	singular مفرد
careful	حريص	careless مهمل	full	متلئ	hungry جوعان
strong	قوى	weak ضعيف	healthy	صحي	unhealthy غير صحي

## Conjugations of irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

	Present	Past simple	Past participle
<b>Lesson 1</b>			
hurt	يؤذى / يؤلم / يصيب	hurt	hurt
put	يضع	put	put
<b>Lesson 2</b>			
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
give	يعطى	gave	given
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
get	يحصل على	got	got

## Definitions

## التعريفات

## Lesson 2

allergic	لديه حساسية	getting ill when you eat or touch something
delicious	لذيذ	very nice to eat
energy	طاقة	something that gives you the power to do things
fast food	طعام سريع	food that is quick and easy to buy or cook

## Language Notes

## (1) It's + adj. + to + inf.

- It is **easy** to make hawawshi.

إنه من

## (2) go + v.ing

- I **go running** every day.

يذهب

## (3) try to + inf.

## try not to + inf.

- I tried **to open** the door, but I couldn't.
- I try **not to eat** too much.

يحاول أن

يحاول ألا

## (4) make + adj. / inf.

- The teacher **made** the pupils **laugh**.
- The teacher **made** the pupils **happy**.

يجعل



## Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 His words made me ..... . I'm angry with him.  
 a) happy      b) happily      c) sad      d) sadly
- 2 She went ..... yesterday.  
 a) swim      b) swimming      c) to swimming      d) for swim
- 3 It's important ..... hard.  
 a) to study      b) study      c) studying      d) to studying
- 4 My mother advised me to try ..... too many sweets.  
 a) eating      b) don't eat      c) to eat      d) not to eat

## Write it right

### How to write about your favourite meal

كيفية الكتابة عن وجبتك المفضلة

- I love (الاسم الأداة).
- I often have it for (breakfast/lunch/dinner) with (أيام من تناولها).
- It's (وصف المذاق). It's delicious.
- My mum always cooks it for us, but it is easy to make.
- You need (اذكر المكونات الأساسية).
- You can put (ما يمكنك إضافةه عليها).
- I always eat it with salad because I like healthy food.
- It helps us to stay strong.

#### Example

Write an email to your friend Reem to tell her about your favourite snack. Your name is Radwa and your email address is rawda@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is reem@yahoo.com.



To : reem@yahoo.com

From : rawda@yahoo.com

Subject : My favourite snack

Dear Reem,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you are in a good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack. I love samosa. I often have it for dinner with my family. It's spicy. It is delicious. It is easy to make. You need meat, onions, and peas. You can put cheese, too. I always eat it with salad because I like healthy food. It helps us to stay strong. Have you tried it before? I'm looking forward to seeing you. Best wishes.

Yours,

Rawda

#### Check Point:

Write an email of about (90) words to your friend Susan to tell her about the last meal you cooked. Your name is Maria and your email address is maria@student.com. Your friend's email address is susan@student.com.

#### Writing tips

Make sure that you have complete sentences, correct spelling, and necessary capitalisation and punctuation.

لا تتهاون في كتابة الفقرة، تأكد من أن:

كل الجمل مكتملة و ذات معنى.

كلمات مكتوبة بقافية صحيحة.

علامات الترقيم صحيحة.

## Lesson 1



## Listening Text

## Pre-listening question:

- What's the most popular dish in Egypt?

- 1. Listen and put the snacks from page 12 in the order that you hear them.**  
**Were your answers to the quiz correct?**

SB page 13



(1) كيكة الاسفنج

(2) وجبة خفيفة

(3) الفول

(4) لذيد

(5) محبوب / شهي

(6) متجر الرقائق

(7) ملح

(8) سعدوسة

(9) مقبل

(10) روjak

(11) حلوي

(12) كثير العمير

(13) توابل

**Speaker 1 :** Sfenj<sup>(1)</sup> is a kind of cake from Morocco. It has lots of sugar and fat in it and it's very sweet, so it is not very healthy, but I love it! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a **snack**<sup>(2)</sup> with some tea or a cup of coffee.

**Speaker 2 :** In many places, people use **fava beans**<sup>(3)</sup> to make falafel. They are the best! Falafel is really **delicious**<sup>(4)</sup> and it is **very popular**<sup>(5)</sup> in Egypt.

**Speaker 3 :** In Britain, we often buy chips from a fish and **chip shop**<sup>(6)</sup>. People often put some salt on their chips. I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like **salty**<sup>(7)</sup> food. It is not very healthy.

**Speaker 4 :** You can buy **samosas**<sup>(8)</sup> on the street everywhere in India. Samosas have **spicy**<sup>(9)</sup> vegetables inside them. People often eat samosas for a snack. I love to eat them with some hot tea.

**Speaker 5 :** Rojak<sup>(10)</sup> is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in Malaysia and people also make it at home. Rojak is very **sweet**<sup>(11)</sup> and **juicy**<sup>(12)</sup>. People use different **spices**<sup>(13)</sup> in different parts of the country, but it's always delicious.

## Post-listening question:

- What's your favourite snack?

**Pre-reading question:**

- What's your favourite snack? Can you cook it?

**2. Complete the email with *some* or *any*.**

WB page 77



**Hi Tom,**

How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite **snack**<sup>(1)</sup>. I love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need **some** nice bread. Then you put **some** meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put **some** **salt**<sup>(2)</sup> on it, too. I don't like to have **any** salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is **delicious**<sup>(3)</sup>! Do you have **any** favourite snacks? Describe them to me in your next email!

وجبة خفيفة (1)

ملح (2)

لذيذ (3)

**Best wishes,**

**Osama**

**Post-reading questions:**

1. Is it easy to make hawawshi?
2. Mention 3 things you need to make hawawshi.
3. Why shouldn't we put a lot of salt on the food?

## Lesson 2



## Listening Text

## Pre-listening question:

- How often do you visit your grandparents?

**4. Listen to Amal and Huda talking to their grandmother and answer the questions.**

SB page 15

**Grandmother :** Would you like some more chicken, Amal?

**Amal :** Yes, please, just a little.

**Grandmother :** And would you like some more beans, too?

**Amal :** Yes, thank you, grandmother ... stop, that's enough! I mustn't eat too much.

**Huda :** Do you like chicken, Amal?

**Amal :** Yes, I love Grandmother's spicy chicken. It's the best!

**Huda :** Thank you, Grandmother, that was a delicious dinner!

**Grandmother :** Would you girls like some more rice pudding?

**Huda :** No, thank you, I'm really full.

**Grandmother :** What about you, Amal?

**Amal :** Thank you, but I really couldn't. Why don't you have a rest now, grandmother? Huda and I can take the plates to the kitchen and we'll do the washing up.



## Post-listening question:

- Who made the dinner? How was it?



## Pre-reading question:

- What kinds of food are you allergic to?

1. Read the texts about two teenagers<sup>(1)</sup> and answer the questions.

SB page 14

## What I eat



My name's Imad. I am **allergic** to <sup>(2)</sup> nuts, so I must be careful what I eat. If I eat something with **nuts** <sup>(3)</sup> in it, I will get ill! For most of the time, this is not a problem. However, I like sweet things, and there are a few **types** <sup>(4)</sup> of cake that have nuts in them, so I can't eat those.

I'm **lucky** <sup>(5)</sup> because my mother makes me many different, delicious things to eat at home. She says I should eat more vegetables and salad. I have a lot of fruit, and that's healthy!



I'm Mustafa. I'm on the school **athletics team** <sup>(6)</sup> and I go running every day, so I need food that gives me **energy** <sup>(7)</sup>.

I eat a lot of rice and pasta every day. I also eat a few healthy snacks, like nuts.

After **athletics practice** <sup>(8)</sup>, my friends and I sometimes get some fast food, like pizzas, on the way home, but I try not to eat too much!

مراهقين (1)
لبيه حساسية من (2)
مكسرات (3)
أنواع (4)
محظوظ (5)
فرق ألعاب القوى (6)
طاقة (7)
تدريب ألعاب القوى (8)

## Post-reading questions:

1. What should and shouldn't you eat a lot of? Why?
2. What's Imad's problem with the sweet things?
3. What's your advice for those who eat a lot of fast food?

## Lesson 2



## Reading Text

## Pre-reading question:

What should we do to be healthy?

## 4. Circle the correct words.

Judy plays squash <sup>(1)</sup> every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a netball game, she always eats some fish with a lot of pasta, because this gives her energy. When she is playing netball <sup>(2)</sup>, she drinks a little water. Then, after the game, she eats a few sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very good for her.

WB page 78

(1) الاسكواش

(2) كرة الشبكة



## Post-reading questions:

1. Why does Judy eat a lot of fish?
2. Does she eat many sweets? Why/Why not?

## Lesson 2



## Listening Text

## 6. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 5, then role-play the dialogue.

WB page 78

**Grandma :** Would you like some cake, Leila?

**Leila :** Yes, please, just a little. I mustn't eat too much.

**Grandma :** Would you like a cup of tea with the cake?

**Leila :** Thank you, I like tea.

**Grandma :** Do you like sugar in your tea?

**Leila :** Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.

**Grandma :** Here you are, tea with cake!



**Vocabulary Exercises**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 Rojak is a popular snack in Malaysia. It's a ..... fruit snack.  
 a) juice      b) juicy      c) salt      d) sweets
- 2 You should eat healthy .....  
 a) snakes      b) snacks      c) spikes      d) sneaks
- 3 I like to eat the Indian snack, samosa, because it's .....  
 a) juicy      b) horrible      c) sweet      d) spicy
- 4 I don't like ..... food as it has lots of fat and sugar in it.  
 a) hot      b) spicy      c) sweet      d) salty
- 5 People like to drink juice or water when they are .....  
 a) full      b) thirsty      c) hungry      d) angry
- 6 I don't like ..... food. Don't put too much salt again.  
 a) salty      b) sweet      c) juicy      d) delicious
- 7 This food has a nice .....  
 a) toast      b) tasty      c) taste      d) test
- 8 I am ..... to nuts, so I must be careful with what I eat.  
 a) addicted      b) allergic      c) ready      d) interested
- 9 If you eat unhealthy food, you'll ..... ill.  
 a) do      b) make      c) get      d) have
- 10 I'm ..... to have a teacher like Mr Waleed. He's really helpful.  
 a) messy      b) lucky      c) unlucky      d) bad
- 11 Manal always helps her mum ..... the washing up.  
 a) do      b) make      c) get      d) take
- 12 Everyone should have food that ..... them energy.  
 a) has      b) makes      c) gets      d) gives
- 13 Don't eat too much ..... food like pizzas.  
 a) slow      b) fast      c) healthy      d) delicious
- 14 I walk past many shops ..... my way home from school.  
 a) to      b) by      c) at      d) on



## Language

### 1

### Countable and uncountable nouns

#### Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة

وهي الأسماء التي لها مفرد وجمع.  
 book - car - man - boy - table - chair  
 books - cars - men - boys - tables - chairs

#### Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

وهي الأسماء التي لا يمكن عدّها وتبقى مفرداً دائمًا وليس لها جمع (كمية).  
 water - rice - salt - sugar - information

#### a/an

- تستخدم (a/an) مع الاسم المعدود في حالة المفرد.
- (a) مع الاسم الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك (u - o - i - e - ə)
- (a) مع الاسم الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن (باقي الحروف).
- Mum, I want **an egg**, please.
- There's **an orange** on the table.
- My father bought **a new car** yesterday.
- I don't want **a cheese sandwich**.

#### some & any

- (some) (بعض) تأتي مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) في حالة الإثبات.
- We sometimes eat sfenj with **some tea**.
- People often put **some salt** on their chips.
- I saw **some boys** playing in the street.

لاحظان:

- تستخدم (some) مع حالة العرض أو الطلب.
- Would you like **some juice?** (عرض)
- Can you give me **some water?** (طلب)
- (any) (أي) تأتي مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) في حالة السؤال والنفي.
- I don't **put any salt** on hawawshi.
- Is there **any salt** in this?
- Do you have **any oranges**?

**a lot of = lots of / many / much**

(كثير من) وهي تأتي مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) غالباً في حالة الإثبات.

- I have **a lot of fruit**.

- I eat **a lot of rice and pasta**.

- I invited **a lot of friends** to my birthday party.

ويمكن استخدام (many) (كثير للجمع) مع الاسم الجمع فقط غالباً في السؤال والتفن.

- I don't eat **many snacks**.

ويمكن استخدام (much) (كثير للكمية) مع الاسم الغير معدود (كمية) فقط غالباً في السؤال والتفن.

- I don't eat **much salad**.

**a few / a little**

(قليل للجمع) تأتي مع الاسم الجمع فقط، غالباً في الإثبات.

- There are **a few types** of cake that have nuts in them.

- Does Habiba have **a few friends**?

(قليل للكمية) تأتي مع الاسم غير المعدود (كمية) فقط غالباً في الإثبات.

- My sister prefers **a little salt** in her food.

- There is **a little sugar** in my tea.

**To sum up**

الاسم الجموع أو الكمية	الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد	الاسم الجموع	الاسم الكمية
a / an	some / any / a lot of	a few / many	a little / much

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. My little brother sometimes eats a few ..... (**nut**) for breakfast.

2. Do you have any ..... (**type**) of cake?

## 2

***like/would like*****like + n./v. + ing/to + inf.**

(يحب)

(1)

**We use (like) to talk about what we prefer.**

- نستخدم (like) للتحدث عما نفضله.

- I like orange juice.

- I don't like tea.

- I like to have eggs for breakfast.

- My sister likes watching cartoons.

**Do/Does + subject + like + n./v. + ing/to + inf.?**

هل يحب ...؟

- Do you like coffee/drinking coffee?

- Does your sister like to play squash?

**would ('d) like + n./to + inf.**

(يود/يريد أن)

(2)

**We use (would like) to make offers and ask for things.**

- نستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض وطلب الأشياء.

- What would you like for breakfast?

- I'd like some beans, please.

- I'd like to have some juice.

**Would + subject + like + n./ to + inf.?**

هل يود/هل يريد أن ...؟

- Would you like a sandwich?

- Would you like to have some tea?

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. My cousin likes ..... (read) adventure stories.

2. ..... (Will) you like to have some salad?

**Check Point****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 Where would you like .....

a) go                    b) goes                    c) to go                    d) to going

2 I want to buy ..... MP3 player.

a) a                    b) an                    c) some                    d) any

3 I like eating fish because it doesn't have ..... fat.

a) many                b) some                c) any                d) a lot

## Language Exercises

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 There are ..... cars in the centre of the city.  
 a) much      b) a little      c) a lot      d) a few
- 2 Hurry up! We only have a ..... time before the bus leaves.  
 a) lot of      b) little      c) few      d) much
- 3 There are ..... shops near my school.  
 a) a      b) a little      c) a few      d) much
- 4 I've got a ..... of books because I like reading.  
 a) few      b) little      c) lot      d) many
- 5 I ate ..... sandwich for lunch.  
 a) a      b) an      c) some      d) any
- 6 Eating out is expensive here. There aren't ..... cheap restaurants.  
 a) any      b) some      c) little      d) a
- 7 Liverpool has ..... of great players like Mohammed Salah.  
 a) some      b) a few      c) many      d) lots
- 8 Would you like ..... tea?  
 a) an      b) a      c) some      d) any
- 9 There are ..... expensive new flats next to the river.  
 a) an      b) a      c) any      d) some
- 10 It's very quiet. There are ..... people here today.  
 a) many      b) a lot of      c) a few      d) a little
- 11 I'm hot and thirsty. I ..... a cold drink, please.  
 a) 'd like      b) 'd like to      c) like      d) like to
- 12 ..... some cakes with your tea?  
 a) Do you like      b) Would you like      c) You would like      d) You like

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1 We ..... (have got) any petrol. We need to stop and get some.
- 2 Are there any new ..... (student) this year?
- 3 I ..... (have got) any money. I think I won't buy a new bike.
- 4 I like ..... (apple). They're my favourite fruit.
- 5 ..... (you/like) some rice with your fish?
- 6 I ..... (like) to have a bath this evening.

 Speaking

## 1. Discussing food

## مناقشة الطعام

 What's your favourite juicy fruit that you like to eat when you're thirsty?

ما الفاكهة كثيرة العصير التي تفضل تناولها عندما تكون عطشان؟

I like oranges and pineapples.

 أحب البرتقال والأناناس.

 What can you do if you eat something that is very hot and spicy so that it hurts your mouth?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل عند تناول شيء حار جداً أو متبلاً أدى إلى ألم في فمك؟

I can eat vegetables.

 يمكنني تناول الخضروات.

 The water in the sea is salty. Can you think of a food with this taste?

هياه البحر鹹味。هل يمكنك التفكير في طعام بنفس المذاق المالح؟

I think fish is salty, too.

 أعتقد أن السمك مملح أيضاً.

 If we don't want to use sugar to make food sweet, what other things can we use?

إذاً كنا لا نريد استخدام السكر لتحلية الطعام، فما الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكننا أن نستخدمها؟

I think we can use honey.

 أعتقد أنه يمكننا استخدام العسل.

Type a message 



## 2. Offering, Accepting and Refusing food

عرض وقبول ورفض الطعام



### Speaking Exercise

**Complete the following dialogue:**

"**A woman is asking her husband about what he'd like to have for lunch.**"

**Mother :** I'm going to the market to do some shopping.

**Father :** What are you going to make for lunch?

**Mother :** Well, (1) ..... to have?

**Father :** I'd like fish. It's (2) ..... food.

**Mother :** Well, (3) ..... rice with it?

**Father :** Yes, that's fine. I like rice.

**Mother :** Would you like some salad?

**Father :** Yes, I (4) ..... salad very much.

**Mother :** Anything else?

**Father :** (5) .....

# Lessons 1&2

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

"Hussien and Abdullah are talking about food."

Hussein : I'm hungry. I would like to eat something.

Abdullah : Where (1) ..... ?

Hussein : I would like to go to the new restaurant.

Abdullah : What kind of food do you like?

Hussein : (2) ..... hawawshi. Do you like hawawshi?

Abdullah : (3) ..... , but it isn't my favourite food.

Hussein : (4) ..... ?

Abdullah : My favourite food is pizza. Do you like it?

Hussein : (5) ..... . It's my favourite food, too.

Abdullah : Well, the same. I like the spicy food, too.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1 I like to have my lunch when I ..... home from school.

- a) get      b) bake      c) buy      d) become

2 I'm very ill, so the doctor advised me to be ..... about what I eat.

- a) lucky      b) careful      c) tidy      d) noisy

3 I asked my dad to ..... my best friend to our house to watch a match with me.

- a) come      b) discover      c) invent      d) invite

4 You should stop eating when you feel .....

- a) free      b) thirsty      c) full      d) hungry

5 My mother ordered me not to touch the ..... because it's very hot.

- a) oven      b) fridge      c) chair      d) freezer

6 I like ..... food.

- a) pieces      b) spices      c) spicy      d) spaces

7 A/An ..... is the person who is between 13 and 19 years old.

- a) infant      b) child      c) baby      d) teenager

- 8 There are ..... people at the cinema as the film is not very good.  
 a) much      b) many      c) a little      d) a few
- 9 There is a ..... pizza in the fridge if you are hungry.  
 a) little      b) few      c) lots      d) lot
- 10 I can lend you ..... money if you need.  
 a) some      b) any      c) few      d) many

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1 I'd like some ..... (banana), please.
- 2 I'd like to ..... (bought) a new phone.
- 3 She wants to buy ..... (an) new dress for the party.
- 4 There is too ..... (many) rice in the fridge.

**4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Nancy to tell her about your favourite snack. Your name is Seham and your email address is seham@student.com. Your friend's email address is nancy@student.com.**

25

**Assess Your Progress**

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	
(1-15) (16-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-25)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-55)	

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16 - 18 WB pages 79 & 80

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3					
add (ed) (to)	يضيف (إلى)	instructions	تعليمات	strong body	جسم قوى
fresh	طازج	knife	سكين	strong bones	عظام قوية
frying pan	قدر القلي	protein	بروتين		
humans	البشر	recipe	وصفة طعام		

### أطعمة ومشروبات Foods & drinks

butter	زبدة	fat	دهون	omelette أصلية/عجة البيض
cheese	جبن	fish	سمك	onion بصلة
chopped vegetables	الخضار المقطعة	lemon juice	عصير ليمون	soup حساء/شوربة
dairy products	منتجاتألبان	meat	لحم	sugar سكر
eggs	بيض	milk	لبن	

### Cooking verbs أفعال الطهي

beat (with)	يخفق (بيض/زبدة) بـ	fry (y)ied	يقلن
boil (ed)	يغلي/يسلق	heat (ed)	يُسخن
chop (ped) (into)	يقطع (إلى)	pour (ed) (into)	يصب (في)

### Lesson 4

century eggs	بيض القرن (المحفوظ) (أكلة صينية)	durian fruit	فاكهة دوريان	smell	يشم
champorado	عصيدة أرز الشوكولاتة الحلوة	fesikh	فسيخ	taste (d)	يتذوق
diagram	رسم تخطيطي/توضيحي	normal	عادى		
dry fish	سمك جاف	salty fish	سمك مملح	tuyo	توبو (نوع سمك)

**UNIT 8**

**Adjectives for food (look/smell/taste)**

**صفات للطعام**

delicious	لذيذ	horrible	فظيع/رهيب	unusual	غير معتاد
good/bad	جيد/سيء	terrible	فظيع/سيئ جداً	nice	لطيف

**Senses and parts of the body**

**الحواس وأجزاء الجسم**

<b>Sense</b>	see	يرى	hear	يسمع	touch	يلمس	taste	يتذوق	smell	يشم
<b>Part</b>	eyes	العين	ears	الأذن	fingers	أصابع اليد	mouth	الفم	nose	الأنف

**Additional Vocabulary**

**المفردات الإضافية**

**Lesson 3**

body	جسم	fridge	ثلاجة	piece	جزء/قطعة
bowl	سلطانية	grandparents	الأجداد	ready	جاهز/مستعد
call (ed)	يسمع	hair	شعر	square	مربع
dining room	حجرة الطعام	move (d)	يتحرك	supermarket	سوبر ماركت
discuss (ed)	يناقش	oil	زيت	tomatoes	طماطم
fork	شوكة	pan	مقلاة/حفلة	tomato salad	سلطة طماطم
foul mudammas	فول مدمس	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	until	حتى

**Lesson 4**

centimetre (cm)	ستيometer	ice cream	أيس كريم	the Philippines	الفلبين
China	الصين	Indonesia	إندونيسيا	together	معًا
fried chicken	دجاج مقلي	sweet chocolate rice	رز الشوكولاتة الحلو	try (y-ed)	يجرب

**Language Expressions****العبارات اللغوية**

Lesson 3

▶ a strong body	لديه جسم قوي
have ▶ strong bones	لديه عظام قوية

keep ▶ food

يحفظ الطعام

**Prepositions****حروف الجر**

Lesson 3

a glass <b>of</b> water	كوب من الماء	for a long time	لعدة طوبلة	take <b>out of</b>	يخرج من
some <b>of</b> all types of food	بعض من جميع أنواع الطعام	on the internet	على الانترنت		

Lesson 4

on the outside	من الخارج	for most people	بالنسبة لمعظم الناس	under the ground	تحت الأرض
on the inside	من الداخل	different from	مختلف عن		

**Words and Opposites****الكلمات وعکسها**

Lesson 3

expensive	غال	cheap	رخيص	difficult	صعب	easy	سهل
-----------	-----	-------	------	-----------	-----	------	-----

Lesson 4

hard	صلب	soft	لين	normal	عادى	abnormal	غير عادى
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد	popular	شعبي/محبوب	unpopular	غير شعبي/غير محبوب

**Conjugations of Irregular verbs****تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة****Present****Past simple****Past participle**

Lesson 3

beat	يُخْفِق	beat	beaten
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
have/has	يملك/لديه	had	had
run	يجري	ran	run
sleep	يتَّم	slept	slept

eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
see	يرى	saw	seen
smell	يشم	smelt	smelt

### Language Notes

#### 1 called

##### is/are called

- People eat something **called** 'champorado' with 'tuyo' for breakfast.
- In China, people eat eggs that are months or years old! They **are called** century eggs.

#### 2 smell/taste/look + adj.

- Century eggs **smell** bad.
- 'Champorado' with 'tuyo' **looks** unusual.
- Durian fruits are very healthy and **taste** delicious.



### Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My teacher ..... Mr Said Darahem.  
 a) calls      b) called      c) is called      d) calling
- 2 Fesikh tastes really ..... You should try it.  
 a) horrible      b) terrible      c) bad      d) nice
- 3 I think that fried chicken ..... really good.  
 a) smells      b) looks      c) tests      d) tastes

## Write it right

### How to write about your favourite recipe كيفية الكتابة عن وصفة الطعام المفضلة

- I always help my mum in the kitchen.
- She always teaches me to make (أنواع الطعام).
- I like to make (اسم الأكلة).
- Firstly, (الخطوة الأولى لصنع الأكلة).
- Then, add (الإضافات).
- Finally, (الخطوة الأخيرة).

#### Writing tips

A good paragraph is composed of a topic sentence (or key sentence), relevant supporting sentences, and a closing sentence.

تكون الفقرة الجيدة من الجملة الافتتاحية والجمل المترابطة الداعمة والجملة الخاتمية.

#### Example

#### My favourite recipe

I always help my mum in the kitchen. She always teaches me how to make different kinds of food. She gives me easy and clear instructions and I always remember them. I like to make omelette. Firstly, beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk. Then add a little salt to the eggs and milk. Heat some butter in a frying pan. After that pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter. Finally, when the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve with salad.

#### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of about (90) words on "A good recipe".

#### "A good recipe"

## Lesson 3



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:** - Do you think your eating habits are healthy?

## 1. Complete the quiz:

SB page 16

## A healthy food quiz



- 1 If you want to be healthy, you should eat ..... .
  - a) only fruit and vegetables
  - b) a lot of meat and cheese
  - c) some of all types of food
  
- 2 We need to drink ..... glasses of water every day.
  - a) eight
  - b) two
  - c) four
  
- 3 Dairy products<sup>(1)</sup> like milk and cheese help us to ..... .
  - a) have lots of hair
  - b) have strong bones<sup>(2)</sup>
  - c) run fast
  
- 4 Meat, cheese and nuts have protein<sup>(3)</sup> in them and we need protein to ..... .
  - a) sleep well
  - b) move fast
  - c) have a strong body<sup>(4)</sup>
  
- 5 A lot of sugar ..... .
  - a) makes it difficult to sleep
  - b) is bad for your teeth
  - c) makes you sleep longer
  
- 6 Examples of healthy snacks are ..... .
  - a) fruit and nuts
  - b) chocolate and sweets
  - c) salty chips
  
- 7 People need to eat ..... pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.
  - a) one to two
  - b) five to ten
  - c) one
  
- 8 People often like fast food because ..... .
  - a) it has lots of fat and sugar in it
  - b) it gives you energy
  - c) you can eat a lot of it and not feel full
  
- 9 Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ..... .
  - a) expensive
  - b) fresh<sup>(5)</sup>
  - c) from a big supermarket

## Answers:

Score 1-3: Not good. There are a lot of things you need to learn about healthy eating.

Score 4-6: Quite good. You need to learn a little more to be really healthy!

Score 7-9: Very good! You know all about healthy eating.

(1) c (2) a (3) b (4) c (5) b (6) a (7) b (8) a (9) b

One point for each correct answer:

**Post-reading question:** - How do we build healthy eating habits?

## Lesson 3



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading questions:** 1. Do you like cooking?  
2. What was the last meal you cooked?

5. Complete the **recipes**<sup>(1)</sup> for an omelette and tomato salad with these instructions.

SB page 17



beat



heat



fry



chop



pour



serve

How to make an omelette<sup>(2)</sup>

1. Beat<sup>(4)</sup> two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
2. Add<sup>(5)</sup> a little salt to the eggs and milk.
3. Heat<sup>(6)</sup> some butter in a frying pan<sup>(7)</sup>.
4. Pour<sup>(8)</sup> the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.
5. When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve<sup>(9)</sup> with salad.

How to make a tomato salad<sup>(3)</sup>

1. Take two big tomatoes and half an onion.
2. Chop<sup>(10)</sup> all the vegetables into small squares.
3. Put the chopped vegetables<sup>(11)</sup> into a bowl.
4. Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5. Serve the salad with your omelette.

(1) وصفات الطعام/طريقة التحضير

(2) أومليت/عجة البيض

(3) سلطة طماطم

(4) يخفق

(5) يضيف

(6) يسخن

(7) قدر القلى

(8) يصب

(9) يقدم طعاماً/يقدم

(10) يقطع

(11) الخضار المقطوع

## Post-reading question:

- Was the recipe above useful for you?

**Pre-reading question:**

- When do you usually eat foul mudammas?

**4. Circle the correct words in the recipe.**

WB page 79

**How to make foul mudammas**

1. Wash some beans and put them in a pan.
2. Add some water and salt to the beans.
3. Heat the beans in the water until it boils.
4. Pour some lemon juice over the hot beans.
5. Serve it with warm bread.

**Post-reading question:**

- How can we make foul mudammas?

**Pre-listening question:** What kinds of food do you like?**2. Listen to four people talking about food. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

WB page 80

**Ashraf :** I'm Ashraf. I really like trying unusual food because I like to taste new things.

**Dina :** My name's Dina. When I was younger, I thought vegetables didn't taste nice at all. Now I like them. I eat a lot of them because I know they are healthy.

**Heba :** I'm Heba. Yesterday I ate fesikh. This is a dry fish. It doesn't taste nice at all, and it smells horrible!

**Basel :** My name's Basel. I love the smell of cakes when they are cooking, but I never eat cakes at all. I'm allergic to nuts.

**Post-listening question:** What's fesikh?

## Lesson 4



## Reading Text

## Pre-reading question:

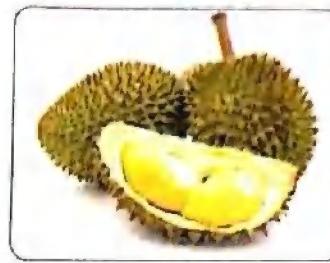
- What unusual food or drink have you tried? What was it like?

## 1. Read about some unusual food. Which would or wouldn't you like to try? Why?

SB page 18

Unusual <sup>(1)</sup> but delicious <sup>(2)</sup>

Some food **smells**<sup>(3)</sup> bad or looks unusual – but still tastes good!



'Durian fruits'<sup>(4)</sup> grow in Indonesia and Malaysia.

Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell **terrible**<sup>(5)</sup>, but they are very healthy and taste delicious. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.

In the Philippines, people eat something called 'champorado'<sup>(6)</sup> with 'tuyo'<sup>(7)</sup> for breakfast. 'Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice and 'tuyo' are small salty fish.

غير معتاد (1)
لذيد (2)
نو (يصدر) رائحة (3)
فاكهة دوريان (4)
قطيع/سيء جداً (5)
عصيدة أرز الشوكولاتة الحلوة (6)
تويو (سمك) (7)



For most people, it's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together, but it is popular in the Philippines!

In China, people eat eggs that are months or years old! They are called century eggs and they are black and green inside. To make them, people put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste, but lots of people think they are delicious.

## Post-reading question:

- In which two ways are century eggs different from normal eggs?

**Vocabulary Exercises**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 ..... is bad for your teeth.  
 a) Milk      b) Sugar      c) Salt      d) Oil
- 2 We need to eat protein to have a/an ..... body.  
 a) terrible      b) unhealthy      c) weak      d) strong
- 3 My mother's food ..... delicious. I like it very much.  
 a) tastes      b) feels      c) hears      d) touches
- 4 To be healthy, you should eat ..... fruits.  
 a) old      b) bad      c) fresh      d) horrible
- 5 My mum likes to use ..... vegetables in the salad. It looks delicious.  
 a) fried      b) chopped      c) bad      d) terrible
- 6 We ..... things with our mouth to know whether they are bad or good.  
 a) taste      b) smell      c) touch      d) hear
- 7 To make an omelette, ..... eggs in a bowl.  
 a) heat      b) pour      c) beat      d) chop
- 8 I usually help my mum to ..... the food after she makes it.  
 a) try      b) serve      c) fry      d) pour
- 9 People often eat in the ..... room.  
 a) living      b) bedroom      c) bathroom      d) dining
- 10 Most people like to eat pasta with a ..... .  
 a) fork      b) knife      c) pan      d) bowl
- 11 My sister doesn't like fesikh. She thinks it's ..... .  
 a) good      b) terrible      c) delicious      d) nice
- 12 It's ..... to eat sweet and salty things together.  
 a) good      b) normal      c) nice      d) unusual
- 13 Mothers keep food in the ..... .  
 a) bookshelf      b) fridge      c) oven      d) bathroom
- 14 I dropped some tea when I ..... it into the cup.  
 a) heated      b) fried      c) poured      d) chopped
- 15 Milk and butter are ..... products.  
 a) dear      b) diary      c) deer      d) dairy



# Lessons 3 & 4

## General Exercises

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 What does the text teach you to make? نصل الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب 4  
 a) Century eggs.      b) Durian fruits.  
 c) An omelette.      d) Foul mudammas.
- 2 What should you wash first?  
 a) Some beans.    b) A pan.      c) Some salt.      d) Lemons.
- 3 Should you make the water boil?  
 a) No.      b) Yes.      c) Maybe.      d) I don't know.
- 4 What should you put over the hot beans?  
 a) Chips.      b) Sugar.      c) Lemon juice.      d) Nuts.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Durian fruits are hard and green ..... the outside. 10  
 a) at      b) on      c) in      d) of
- 2 I like eating ..... fish very much.  
 a) sweet      b) spice      c) salt      d) salty
- 3 To make century eggs, people put fresh eggs ..... the ground for a long time.  
 a) under      b) on      c) above      d) behind
- 4 Century eggs are different from ..... eggs.  
 a) hard      b) normal      c) abnormal      d) soft
- 5 We ..... with our noses.  
 a) hear      b) touch      c) smell      d) taste
- 6 Please, mum, ..... the soup. It's cold.  
 a) beat      b) add      c) pour      d) heat
- 7 My sister likes to boil the eggs, but I prefer to ..... them.  
 a) fry      b) chop      c) pour      d) heat
- 8 ..... more sugar to the coffee.  
 a) Adds      b) Add      c) Added      d) Adding

- 9 Don't ..... presents from strangers.  
 a) accepts      b) accepted      c) accepting      d) accept

- 10 ..... off the lights when you go to bed to save energy.  
 a) Don't turn      b) Not turn      c) Turn      d) Doesn't turn

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 ..... (not) forget your books again.

2 ..... (looking) out! There's a car coming.

3 Remember to wear comfortable shoes. And ..... (taking) some warm clothes, too.

4 Heat the sugar and butter in a pan, then ..... (to add) the milk.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A recipe of your favourite meal"

WB

6

24

### Assess Your Progress

Dictation

General Exercises

Total Marks

Notes

30

24

54



(1-15) (16-24) (25-30)



(1-12) (13-20) (21-24)



(1-27) (26-45) (46-54)

# LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 19 - 21 WB pages 81 & 82



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5				
amount	كمية	cook	طاه/طبخ	explain (ed) بشرح
balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	depend (ed) on	يعتمد على	
own (ed)	يمتلك	upset	متضايق/ منزعج	relax (ed) بسترخي
Lesson 6				
diet	وجبة/نظام غذائي	peppers	فلفل	spinach سبانخ
introduce (d)	يقدم	reason	سبب	surprise (d) يتعجب/يدخل
main	أساسى/رئيسى	result	نتيجة	sweet potato بطاطا

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5				
age	سن/عمر	cakes	كيك	perhaps ربما
aged	بالغ من العمر	happen (ed)	يحدث	problem مشكلة
athletics club	نادي/حصة ألعاب القوى	hungry	جوعان	restaurant مطعم
baby	طفل رضيع	meal	وجبة	snack وجبة خفيفة
because	لأن	parents	الوالدains	tired متعب/مرهق
Lesson 6				
African	افريقي	Okinawans	سكان أوكييناوا	
furthermore	علاوة على ذلك	purple	بنفسجي	such as مثل

### Places

### اماكن

Mali	مالي (دولة)	Senegal	السنغال (دولة)	Tokyo	طوكيو (مدينة)
Okinawa Islands	جزر أوكييناوا اليابانية	Sierra Leone	سيراليون (دولة)	West Africa	غرب إفريقيا

**Language Expressions****العبارات اللغوية****Lesson 5****a day****all the time****do ▶ exercise****do ▶ some drawing****get ▶ enough sleep**

في كل يوم

طوال الوقت

يؤدي تمارين رياضية

يقوم ببعض الرسم

يحصل على قسط كافٍ من النوم

**give ▶ some advice**

يعطي بعض النصائح

**have ▶ time**

لديه وقت

**hours' sleep**

ساعات النوم

**How much ▶ sleep**

كم كمية النوم؟

**make ▶ sure**

يتأكد

**Lesson 6****another important point**

نقطة أخرى مهمة

**firstly**

أولاً

**have a healthy diet**

لديه نظام غذائي صحي

**in addition to that**

بالإضافة إلى ذلك

**that's why**

ولهذا السبب

**the first point**

النقطة الأولى

**thirdly**

ثالثاً

**to conclude = on conclusion**

وفي الختام

**Prepositions****حروف الجر****Lesson 5****advice for**

نصيحة لـ

**from ... until**

من ... حتى ...

**on the days**

في الأيام

**at night**

في الليل

**go to bed**

يذهب إلى الفراش

يراجع لامتحانات

**at school**

في المدرسة

**go to work**

يذهب إلى العمل

**speak to**

يتحدث مع/إلى

**from ... to ...**

من ... إلى ...

**in the morning**

في الصباح

**worried about**

قلق على

**Lesson 6****come from**

يأتي من

**in the world**

في العالم

**on an island**

على الجزيرة

**Words and Opposites****الكلمات وعکسها****Lesson 5****am**

صباحاً

**pm**

مساءً

**finish**

ينهى

**start**

يبدأ

**important**

هام

**unimportant**

غير هام

**healthy**

صحي

**unhealthy**

غير صحي

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

	Present	Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 5			
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
feel	يشعر بـ	felt	felt
get up	ينهض / يستيقظ	got up	got up
give	يعطى	gave	given
go	ينذهب	went	gone
tell	يخبر	told	told
Lesson 6			
mean	يعني	meant	meant

## Language Notes

## 1 feel + adj.

- She **feels tired** all the time.
- I **felt sad** yesterday.

يشعر بـ

## 2 try + v. + ing

- Why don't you **try eating** more food that gives you energy?

يجب

## 3 too

- Perhaps you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, **too**.

أيضاً (آخر الجملة المثبتة)



## Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I have a nice bike, .....

- a) also                  b) too                  c) other                  d) another

2 You should try ..... exercise daily.

- a) doing                  b) do                  c) did                  d) to doing

3 The boy felt ..... when he got high marks.

- a) sad                  b) sadly                  c) happy                  d) happily

## Write it right

### How to write about a healthy diet

كيفية الكتابة عن نظام غذائي صحي

- My name is **(الاسم)**
- I want to be fit and healthy.
- I go on a healthy diet.
- I eat **(الطعمة صحية)**
- I drink **(مشروبات صحية)**
- I never eat or drink **(طعمة ومشروبات غير صحية)**
- Everyone should have their healthy diet to live longer and healthier life.

#### Example

#### A healthy diet

I live in a village. I like it very much. The air here is very clean. The diet in my village is very healthy. To start with, people in my village eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. The people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein. They are all healthy. Another important point, they eat dairy products that make their bones strong. Furthermore, they get enough sleep. They sleep early and get up early. That's why all the people in my village are healthy. To conclude, everyone should have their healthy diet to live longer and healthier life.

#### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of about (90) words on "How to be healthy".

#### "How to be healthy"

#### Writing tips

Make your last sentence a conclusion.

اجعل جملتك الأخيرة ملخصة للموضوع



**Pre-listening question:** How often do you do a sport?

**1. Listen to three teenagers and complete the information with these words.**

**SB page 19**

**Ali :** My name's Ali. My mum and dad own<sup>(1)</sup> a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen. The cook is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes. The problem is, I'm always trying them, so I eat too many cakes. I also know I don't do enough exercise, but that's because I don't have time. When I'm not at school or doing my homework, I'm usually at the restaurant. I don't want to stop helping my parents, so I don't know what to do.



يمتلك (1)

نظام غذائي صحي (2)

وجبات سريعة (3)

حصة ألعاب القوى (4)

طاقة (5)

يُضيق (6)

**Eman :** I'm Eman. I do a lot of sport and I have a very healthy diet<sup>(2)</sup>. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables and I almost never eat fast food<sup>(3)</sup>. I never eat snacks either, not even when I'm really hungry after athletics club<sup>(4)</sup>. I know eating snacks isn't good for you. But I'm tired all the time. I never feel I get enough sleep, even when I go to bed early! I want to have more energy<sup>(5)</sup>.



**Tamer :** I'm Tamer. I want to go to art school when I'm older, but I don't have enough time to do any drawing or painting at the moment. I'm working really hard at school. I'm worried about my exams. When I feel worried, I don't feel hungry. My mother doesn't think I eat enough, so then she gives me even more food. I don't want to upset<sup>(6)</sup> her, so I can't tell her it's too much!



**Post-listening question:** - What's Ali's problem?

## Lesson 5



## Reading Text

## Pre-reading question:

- What kinds of food do you like?

3. Read the advice and answer the questions.

**SB page 19**



It's good that you don't eat **fast food<sup>(1)</sup>**, but if you feel very hungry between meals, it's a good idea to have a snack.

How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school on the days when you have **athletics club<sup>(2)</sup>**? If you want to have more **energy<sup>(3)</sup>**, why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy like rice and pasta? Perhaps you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, too.

## Post-reading questions:

1. What kinds of healthy snacks should we eat?
2. Is it good advice?



## Life Skills

Make sure you have a balanced diet and eat some of all the types of food.

Eat healthy snacks, sleep well and don't worry too much!





## Pre-reading question:

- Why should we have a diet?

## 1. Read about Okinawa and answer the questions.

SB page 20

## The Okinawan diet

I come from Okinawa<sup>(1)</sup> in Japan and the diet on my island<sup>(2)</sup> is very healthy.

This is for three main reasons<sup>(3)</sup>. Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple and yellow vegetables like spinach<sup>(4)</sup>, sweet potato<sup>(5)</sup> and peppers<sup>(6)</sup>. Furthermore, we don't have much fat in our diet: we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products<sup>(7)</sup>. Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy breakfast. We have soup<sup>(8)</sup> with spinach or eggs with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day.

As you can see, our diet is healthy. That's why Okinawans live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island.

## Post-reading questions:

1. What sorts of food do people in Okinawa eat and not eat?
2. Which Okinawan meal is very healthy? Why?



Okinawa Island



ذرية اوكييناوا (1)



جزرة (2)



اسباب (3)

سبانخ (4)

بطاطا حلوة (5)

فلفل (6)

مشبات الذهاب (7)

شوربة (8)



## 1. Read about sleep and answer the questions.

WB page 81

How much sleep should we have? The answer depends on your age. Very small babies sleep for about 14 or more hours a day! Children aged six to seventeen should sleep for about ten hours a night. Then you need less sleep. Most people, aged 18–65, need about eight hours' sleep.



## Lesson 6



## Reading Text

## Pre-reading question:

- What kinds of food should we eat?

2. Complete the text with these expressions.

WB page 82

## A healthy diet



It may surprise<sup>(1)</sup> you to know that West African countries have one of the healthiest diets<sup>(2)</sup> in the world. Why is this?

Firstly, people in countries such as Senegal, Mali and Sierra Leone eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. Furthermore, the people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein<sup>(3)</sup>.

Another important point is that the people of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.

To conclude, a healthy diet means eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.

## Post-reading questions:

1. What do the people in Senegal, Mali and Sierra Leone usually eat?
2. Is the diet healthy or unhealthy? Why?



يُفاجئ (1)

نظام غذائي (2)

بروتين (3)

**Vocabulary Exercises**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 My father wants to go on a holiday to a green place to ..... .
 

<b>a)</b> worry	<b>b)</b> work	<b>c)</b> relax	<b>d)</b> dance
-----------------	----------------	-----------------	-----------------
- 2 My little sister ..... on me to help her do her maths homework.
 

<b>a)</b> depends	<b>b)</b> protects	<b>c)</b> improves	<b>d)</b> pours
-------------------	--------------------	--------------------	-----------------
- 3 Humans should eat enough ..... of fruit and vegetables.
 

<b>a)</b> reasons	<b>b)</b> results	<b>c)</b> types	<b>d)</b> amounts
-------------------	-------------------	-----------------	-------------------
- 4 Pasta is the ..... ingredient in koshari.
 

<b>a)</b> main	<b>b)</b> same	<b>c)</b> different	<b>d)</b> soft
----------------	----------------	---------------------	----------------
- 5 Our father ..... us when he told us that he would buy a new modern car.
 

<b>a)</b> frightened	<b>b)</b> surprised	<b>c)</b> scared	<b>d)</b> laughed
----------------------	---------------------	------------------	-------------------
- 6 If you don't understand any point, ask your teacher to ..... it.
 

<b>a)</b> explain	<b>b)</b> mean	<b>c)</b> result	<b>d)</b> remember
-------------------	----------------	------------------	--------------------
- 7 I ..... my brother to my friends. They were happy to meet him.
 

<b>a)</b> told	<b>b)</b> moved	<b>c)</b> introduced	<b>d)</b> surprised
----------------	-----------------	----------------------	---------------------
- 8 Basma is worried about her exam ..... .
 

<b>a)</b> reasons	<b>b)</b> results	<b>c)</b> causes	<b>d)</b> types
-------------------	-------------------	------------------	-----------------
- 9 You should ..... sure that you eat all types of healthy food.
 

<b>a)</b> say	<b>b)</b> take	<b>c)</b> do	<b>d)</b> make
---------------	----------------	--------------	----------------
- 10 My mother was worried ..... me when I came home late.
 

<b>a)</b> with	<b>b)</b> on	<b>c)</b> about	<b>d)</b> of
----------------	--------------	-----------------	--------------
- 11 My brother, ..... 9 years, is very active.
 

<b>a)</b> aged	<b>b)</b> age	<b>c)</b> aging	<b>d)</b> ages
----------------	---------------	-----------------	----------------
- 12 This is uncle Adel's restaurant. He ..... it.
 

<b>a)</b> owns	<b>b)</b> borrows	<b>c)</b> lends	<b>d)</b> rents
----------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------
- 13 Hend is ..... because she lost her mobile phone.
 

<b>a)</b> happy	<b>b)</b> pleased	<b>c)</b> upset	<b>d)</b> lost
-----------------	-------------------	-----------------	----------------
- 14 ..... is a vegetable that is very healthy.
 

<b>a)</b> Cheese	<b>b)</b> Spinach	<b>c)</b> Salt	<b>d)</b> Butter
------------------	-------------------	----------------	------------------
- 15 You should follow your father's ..... .
 

<b>a)</b> advice	<b>b)</b> advise	<b>c)</b> device	<b>d)</b> devise
------------------	------------------	------------------	------------------



## Language

### enough/not enough/too many/too much

عند التعبير عن العدد أو الكمية (كافية/غير كافية) نستخدم:

(يس كافياً) ويأتي بعدها اسم جمع أو اسم غير معدود (كمية)  
**(not enough)** بمعنى (كاف/بقدر كاف) / **(enough)**

**جمع / كمية enough/not enough + جمع**

- He doesn't do **enough exercise**.
- There are **enough chairs** for everybody to sit.

عند التعبير عن عدد كثير جداً عن اللازم نستخدم:

(كثيراً أكثر من اللازم) ويأتي بعدها اسم جمع فقط.  
**(too many)** بمعنى

**جمع too many + جمع**

- There are **too many people** on the bus. I'll take the next one.
- Your bag has **too many books** inside. You can't close it.

عند التعبير عن كمية كبيرة جداً عن اللازم نستخدم:

(كثيراً أكثر من اللازم) ويأتي بعدها اسم غير معدود (كمية) فقط.  
**(too much)** بمعنى

**كمية too much + كمية**

- There is **too much sugar** in the tea. I can't drink it.
- Don't put **too much salt**, please.



### Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A: Do you want to go to the cinema with me?

B: Sorry, I don't have ..... time.

a) enough      b) some      c) little

d) few

2 Eating ..... chocolate is unhealthy.

a) too many      b) too much      c) enough

d) lot of

3 There ..... bread in the fridge. We need to buy some.

a) is many      b) is much  
c) is enough      d) isn't enough

## Language Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 There's ..... smoke in here; I can't breathe.
- a) too many      b) too much  
c) enough      d) any
- 2 I ate ..... cakes and felt sick later.
- a) a lot      b) too many  
c) too much      d) enough
- 3 There weren't ..... people to play a match, so everybody went home.
- a) some      b) enough  
c) much      d) many
- 4 You work ..... ; you need a rest.
- a) too much      b) too many      c) a few      d) a little
- 5 Please, don't put too ..... salt in my food. I don't like it salty.
- a) enough      b) little      c) some      d) much
- 6 You use ..... much sugar in your coffee. It isn't healthy for you.
- a) also      b) too      c) more      d) less
- 7 A: Is there any bread in the house? B: Oh, yes, there is ..... bread.
- a) enough      b) many      c) few      d) any
- 8 I know I talk ..... . I should talk less.
- a) enough      b) too  
c) too many      d) too much

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 I don't like people who ask ..... (too much) questions.
- 2 We don't have ..... (time enough) to have another coffee; we need to leave now.
- 3 You spend ..... (too many) time at the computer. You should play outside more often.
- 4 There were ..... (too much) people at the concert and we couldn't see anything.
- 5 I don't have ..... (money enough) to buy that car.



## Speaking

### Giving advice

### اعطاء النصيحة

The smartphone screen displays a conversation between two people, Alaa and Eman, about giving advice on healthy eating.

- Alaa:** - It's good that + فعل + فاعل ..... من الجيد أن.....  
• It's good that you don't eat fast food.
- Eman:** - It's a good idea to + inf. ..... إنه لفكرة جيدة أن .....  
• It's a good idea to have a snack between meals.
- Alaa:** - How about + v. + ing ? ..... ماذا عن .....?  
• How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school?
- Eman:** - Why don't you + inf. ? ..... لم لا .....?  
• Why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy? ..... يمكنك أن .....?
- Alaa:** - You could + inf.  
• Perhaps you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.

At the bottom of the screen, there is a text input field with the placeholder "Type a message" and three icons: a paperclip, a camera, and a microphone.

## Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

"Alaa advises Eman to have a balanced diet."

Eman : I feel tired all the time and I don't get enough sleep.

Alaa : (1) ..... ?

Eman : I usually eat fast food.

Alaa : It's (2) ..... . You should have a balanced diet.

Eman : How can I have a balanced diet?

Alaa : (3) ..... eat some of all the types of food.

Eman : (4) ..... sleep?

Alaa : You should sleep well about eight hours a day.

Eman : What else should I do?

Alaa : You (5) .....

# Lessons 5 & 6

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

"Adam is worried about his maths exam."

Youssef: What's the matter? You look worried.

Adam : I have a maths exam next week. I have some problems with it.

Youssef: (1) ..... you speak to your parents?

Adam : I tried, but I'm worried they will be angry.

Youssef: (2) ..... to explain the problems with the

Adam : Ok, I'll try it. But there's another problem.

Youssef: What is that?

Adam : I (3) ..... bored most of the day.

Youssef: (4) ..... doing some drawing to relax?

Adam : (5) ..... idea.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My best friend comes ..... a small village near Aswan.

- a) by                    b) to                    c) back                    d) from

2 You should tell your parents everything ..... to you.

- a) makes                b) happens                c) takes                d) plays

3 We should ..... advice to each other.

- a) make                b) give                c) follow                d) see

4 If you feel bored, try ..... some drawing to relax.

- a) taking                b) doing                c) giving                d) making

5 A healthy person should have a/an ..... diet every day to stay healthy.

- a) balanced                b) normal                c) unusual                d) unhealthy

6 Yesterday, I did all my homework. ...., I studied all my lessons.

- a) Firstly                b) Conclusion                c) Furthermore                d) Thirdly

7 My brother wants to work as a ..... in a big restaurant.

- a) cook                b) cooker                c) water                d) dentist

8 You drink ..... coffee. It's not good for you.

- a) few                b) some                c) too many                d) too much

- 9 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were ..... people.  
 a) too much      b) too many      c) enough      d) few
- 10 I ate ..... ice cream. I've got a stomach ache.  
 a) too much      b) too many      c) enough      d) any

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I don't like the weather here. There is ..... (too many) rain.

2 I can't wait for them. I haven't got ..... (time enough).

3 I think you've done ..... (many) work. You look tired.

4 Our team didn't play well. We made too many ..... (mistake).

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:  
 "Your healthy diet"

4

6

25

### Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	
(1-15) (16-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-25)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-55)	


**Video Script**

**Narrator :** There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food. Dishes like kushari and **rozz me'ammar**<sup>(1)</sup> are enjoyed by many in Egypt and around the world. But which Egyptian food is good for you before and after you play sport?

Ful medames is a dish made of beans. People usually eat this with a little bread. The beans and the bread contain something called **carbohydrate**<sup>(2)</sup>. Carbohydrate gives you energy to do sport.

Rice, pasta, fruit and vegetables contain a lot of carbohydrate, so why don't you eat these things before you go swimming or do **athletics**<sup>(3)</sup>?

Sugar also gives us energy to do sport. You can find sugar in chocolate, sweets, honey and some desserts like basbousa and **kahk**<sup>(4)</sup>. But you should only eat a little sugar because it is bad for your teeth.

After you play sport, how about eating food that contains **protein**<sup>(5)</sup>? Protein is something that helps our body to **recover**<sup>(6)</sup> after exercise.

Meat, fish and **dairy products**<sup>(7)</sup>, like milk and cheese, contain a lot of protein. So, you should eat things like **kofta**, **sayadiya**<sup>(8)</sup> or **shakshouka**<sup>(9)</sup> after you play sport.

It is important to look after your body. You should do exercise and eat a healthy diet.

أرز معمر (1)

كريوهيدرات (2)

ألعاب القوى (3)

كھٹ (4)

بروتين (5)

يتعافى (6)

متاجلات ألبان (7)

صيادلة (8)

شکشوکة (9)



# Unit 8 Review

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

add (ed) (to)	يضيف	fava beans	حبوب الفول	result	نتيجة
allergic (to)	لدية حساسية (من)	fish	سمك	rojak	روجاك/سلطة خضار وفواكه
amount	كمية	fresh	طازج	salad	السلطة
athletics practice	تدريب ألعاب القوى	fry (y <i>ied</i> )	يقلن	salt	ملح
athletics team	فريق ألعاب القوى	frying pan	قدر القلى	salty fish	سمك مالح
balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	heat (ed)	يسخن	samosa	سمبوسة
beat (with)	يُحقق (بيض/زبدة)	horrible	فظيع	serve (d)	يقدم طعاماً/يخدم
boil (ed)	يغلي/يسلق	humans	البشر	sfenj	الإسفنج (كعكة مقلية محلية)
butter	زبدة	juicy fruit	فاكهة كثيرة العصير	smell	يشم/تفوح (ذو) رائحة
century eggs	بيض القرن (المحفوظ)	knife	سكين	soup	حساء/شوربة
cheese	جبنة	lemon juice	عصير ليمون	spices	توابل/بهارات
chips	رقيقة بطاطس محمصة/شيشي	lucky	محظوظ	spicy	حار/متبل
chop (ped) (into)	يقطع الخضروات	meat	لحم	spinach	سبانخ
chopped vegetables	الخضار المقطوع	milk	لبن	strong body	جسم قوي
dairy products	منتجات ألبان	netball	كرة الشبكة	strong bones	عظام قوية
delicious	لذيذ	normal	عادى	sugar	سكر
delicious vegetable	خضار لذيذ	nuts	مكسرات	surprise (d)	يدهش/يذهل
depend (ed) on	يعتمد على	offer (ed)	يعرض	sweet	حلو
diet	وجبة/نظام غذائي	omelette	أومليت/عجة البيض	sweet potato	بطاطا
dry fish	سمك جاف	onion	بصلة	taste	مذاق
durian fruit	فاكهة دوريان	oven	فرن	taste (d)	يتذوق/يأخذ (ذو) مذاق
eggs	بيض	peppers	فلفل	teenager	مراهق
energy	طاقة	popular	محبوب/شعبي/شائع	terrible	فظيع/سيئ جداً
explain (ed)	يشرح	pour (ed) (into)	يصب (في)	thirsty	عطشان
falafel	فلافل/طعمية	protein	بروتين	type	نوع
fast food	طعام سريع	reason	سبب	watermelon	بطيخ
fat	دهون	relax (ed)	يسترخي		

## Language

1

### Countable and uncountable nouns

الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد a/an	الاسم الجمجم أو الكلمية some/any/a lot of	الاسم الجمجم a few/many	الاسم الكلمية a little/much
--------------------------------	--	----------------------------	--------------------------------

2

### like/would like

1. like + v. + ing / to + المصدر + اسم (يحب)

- I like orange juice.
- I don't like tea.

Do/Does + subject + المصدر + like + اسم + v. + ing / to + هل يحب ...؟

- Do you like coffee?
- Does your sister like to play squash?

2. would ('d) like + المصدر + to + اسم (يود يريد أن)

- What would you like for breakfast?
- I'd like some beans, please.

Would + subject + المصدر + like + to + اسم + هل يود/هل يريد أن؟

- Would you like a sandwich?

3

### Imperatives

- Chop the tomatoes!

- Don't chop them too small!

4

### enough /too many/too much

- He doesn't do enough exercise.

- There are too many people on the bus. I'll take the next one.

- There is too much sugar in the tea. I can't drink it.

## Speaking

### 1. Offering, accepting and refusing food

- |                              |                                   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| - Would you like a sandwich? | - Thank you, but I'm really full. |
| - Do you like coffee?        | - No, I don't. I prefer tea.      |

### 2. Giving advice

- It's good that you don't eat fast food.
- How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school?
- Why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy?
- Perhaps, you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.

**1) Finish the following two-mini dialogues:**

A) Samir: What's your favourite juicy fruit that you like to eat when you're thirsty?

**Samira:** ..... ?

B) Taha: .....

**Tamer:** I think that fried chicken tastes really good.

**2) Match column A with column B:**

**A**

1. If you want to be healthy,
2. The soup is cold.
3. Pour the eggs into the frying pan
4. To make century eggs, they put
5. Ali eats too many cakes

**B**

- a) Shall we heat it?
- b) fresh eggs under the ground for a long time.
- c) How about bringing a few healthy snacks?
- d) and doesn't do enough exercise.
- e) you should eat some of all types of food.
- f) and cook them in the butter.

**Answers:** 1. ( )      2. ( )      3. ( )      4. ( )      5. ( )

**3) Write an email of about (5) sentences to your friend Taha about a healthy diet. Your name is Akram.**

# Test 2

Based on Unit 8

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Are vegetables healthy?  
a) Yes.      b) No.      c) Maybe.      d) I don't know.
- 2 What do nuts and fish contain?  
a) Sugar.      b) Salt.      c) Fat.      d) Protein.
- 3 What types of food shouldn't we eat?  
a) Protein.      b) Vegetables.      c) Fruit.      d) None of these.
- 4 What is this text about?  
a) A healthy sport.      b) A healthy meal.  
c) A healthy diet.      d) A healthy body.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

4

## 2 Complete the following dialogue:

"A wife and a husband are talking about what they need to prepare their meal."

5

**Wife** : Is there any cheese in the fridge?

**Husband**: I think there is (1) ..... cheese. Not much.

**Wife** : OK, I don't need any now.

**Husband**: (2) ..... then?

**Wife** : I want to make a salad later.

**Husband**: I'm going shopping now. (3) ..... like me to buy some cheese at the market?

**Wife** : Yes, please!

**Husband**: Do you need anything else?

**Wife** : (4) ..... . Could you get a few tomatoes, too?

**Husband**: Of course. I think we don't have (5) ..... for the salad.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

6

I only eat basic foods, and I don't like to try new things. But one day, I was once at a restaurant, and my father told me to try some fish. I enjoy many types of fish, so I said, "Why not?" The fish was raw herring in onions and oil. It was cold. I took a piece of the fish with a small piece of raw onion. As it went

in my mouth, it was almost bad. Now, I had a fish that I did not like. There was another big problem that I had with it. My breath smelt horrible for the rest of the day. I would never eat it again. Although I do not like raw herring, many people do. My father eats it every Saturday at lunch. He prefers spicy olive herring. It smells so terrible that I always sit far away from it. Even though it is delicious and very healthy. It has tons of proteins. Raw herring was first made in the Netherlands.

## A) Answer the following questions:

1 Who did the writer go to the restaurant with?

2 What was the writer's second problem?

3 What kind of herring did the father prefer?

## B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 The underlined word "herring" is a type of .....

- a) bird      b) animal      c) fish

d) insect

5 Herring contains lots of .....

- a) protein      b) sugar      c) fat

d) salt

6 ..... people like herring.

- a) A lot of      b) Few      c) Any

d) Not many

## 4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 ..... food tastes hot.

- a) Juicy      b) Nice      c) Sweet

d) Spicy

2 Everyone should have food that ..... them energy.

- a) has      b) makes      c) gets

d) gives

3 You should stop eating when you feel .....

- a) free      b) thirsty      c) full

d) hungry

4 In a restaurant, the waiters usually ..... the food for customers.

- a) try      b) serve      c) fry

d) pour

5 To be healthy, you should eat ..... fruits.

- a) old      b) bad      c) fresh

d) horrible

WB

10

WB

WB

WB

WB

111

- 6 I like eating ..... fish very much.  
 a) sweet      b) spice      c) salt      d) salty
- 7 What are the ..... ingredients in falafel?  
 a) main      b) same      c) different      d) soft
- 8 Don't ..... the birds, I've already done that.  
 a) feed      b) feeding      c) feeds      d) fed
- 9 She ..... playing tennis.  
 a) likes      b) likes to      c) 'd like      d) 'd likes
- 10 There are ..... trees in front of my house.  
 a) a      b) a little      c) a few      d) much

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 ..... (you/like) some rice with your fish?
- 2 I ..... (have got) any money. I think I won't buy a new bike.
- 3 You don't eat ..... (a lot) fruit, you should eat some more.
- 4 I ..... ('d likes) to have a new phone.

**6** Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite recipe"

## Unit 8



# Research Projects



## 1. Healthy and unhealthy food

Do research on "Healthy and unhealthy food".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What do we mean by healthy and unhealthy food?  
Give examples.
- Why should we eat healthy food? And what's its impact on our health?
- What is the result of eating a lot of unhealthy food?
- Do you think eating healthy food is enough for being in a good health? What else should we do?



## 2. Unusual Food

Do research on "Unusual Food".

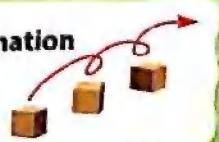
Use these guiding points to help you:

- What unusual food or drink have you tried?
- What are some tastes and smells that you like and don't like? Find examples of things that smell and taste good and bad.
- Which unusual food would or wouldn't you like to try? Why?
- Which country is famous for unusual food? And why is this food different?



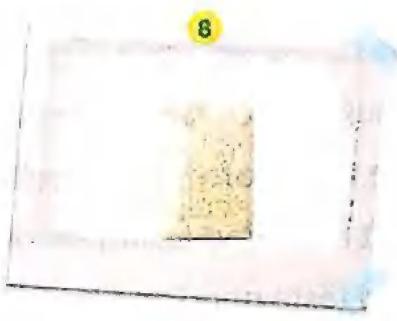
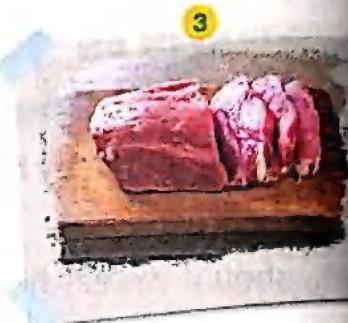
### Research Steps

- 1 ► A suitable title
- 2 ► An introduction
- 3 ► Main Ideas and Information
- 4 ► Results
- 5 ► Resources



# ΑΛΑΩΜΑ ΟΛΑΣΙΣ

Your mum went to the market but when she returned home, she was really tired. So she gave you the shopping bag and asked you to cook. These are all the things in the shopping bag. What will you cook today?



## Ingredients

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

## Recipe

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....



## Unit 9 Watch, listen and make

### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** : An internet chat message; a review of an art gallery; *Little Women*; a review of a film

**Writing** : A short review; a paragraph on a musician

**Listening** : A report about an orchestra; an invitation on the telephone

**Speaking** : Saying what people can do; talking about preferences and giving recommendations; inviting a person somewhere

**Language** : Talking about ability: can, know how to and be able to

**Life Skills** : Collaboration; respect for diversity



Tapescript

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22-25 WB pages 84 & 85

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1				
activities	أنشطة	costumes ملابس خاصة بمناسبة/أزياء	scenery	نظر طبيعي
act (ed)	يمثل	drama club نادي الدراما	script	نص كتابي/سيناريو
concert hall	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	musical instrument آلة موسيقية	show	عرض
cool	رائع	play (ed) (v/n) يعزف/مسرحية	theatre	مسرح
Lesson 2				
art	فن	clay طين صلصال	recommend (ed)	يوصى/يرشح
ancient	قديم جدًا/أثري	colourful زاهي الألوان	review	تقد
artist	فنان	describe (d) يصف	statue	نحت
busy	مزدحم	free مجانيًا	stone	حجر
calligraphy	فن الخط	Islamic area منطقة إسلامية	TV programme	برنامج تلفزيوني
century	(قرن (١٠٠ عام))	painting لوحة ملونة	wood	خشب
the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art المتحف المصري للفن الحديث		the Textile Museum		متحف النسيج

### Types of art

### أنواع الفن

cartoon	رسم متتحرك	photograph صورة فوتوغرافية	pottery	فخار/أزرف
drawing	رسم	portrait صورة فنية للوجه	sculpture	النحت

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1				
amazing	منهل/مدهش	English class حصة لغة إنجليزية	firefighter	igel الاطفاء
chat	محادثة/ دردشة	excited متشوق/منفعل	French	اللغة الفرنسية
children	أطفال	family party حفلة عائلية	funny	مضحك

clothes	ملابس	fantastic	رائع	message	رسالة
damaged	تلف	feel like	يشعر كأنه	paint (ed)	يرسم بالألوان / يدهن
<b>Lesson 2</b> Ancient Egypt مصر القديمة		expressions	تعبيرات	look like	يشبه
camera	كاميرا	important	هام	normal	عادي
dark	ظلم	interesting	شيق / مثير	preference	تفضيل
description	وصف	Iran	إيران	quite	إلى حد ما
Egyptians	العصريون	kind = type = sort	نوع	such as	مثل

## Language Expressions

## العبارات اللغوية

## Lesson 1

act	► in a play	يمثل في مسرحية	play	►	an instrument يعزف على آلة موسيقية
answer ► the phone	يرد على الهاتف		sew	► costumes يخيط ملابس (أزياء خاصة بمناسبة)	يعزف الموسيقى
do ► make-up	يقوم بوضع مكياج		speak ► a language		يتحدث لغة
end-of-year show	عرض نهاية العام		Thanks so much.		شكراً جزيلاً
It sounds fun.	إنه يبدو مرحاً		use ► a computer		يستخدم الكمبيوتر
know how to + inf.	يعرف كيف		write ► a script		يكتب نصاً / سيناريو
paint ► scenery	يرسم مناظراً طبيعية		take ► a photo		يلقط صورة
<b>Lesson 2</b>			talk about ► preferences		يتحدث عن الأفضليات
give ►	a recommendation	يعطي توصية			
	an opinion	يعطي رأياً			

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

## Lesson 1

at drama club في نادي الدراما

help with يساعد في

look through

خلال

get ready for يستعد لـ

in a mountain في الجبل

the best at

فضل في

## Lesson 2

famous for مشهور بـ

from different times من أوقات مختلفة

in history

في التاريخ

for a job لوظيفة

from my point of view من وجهة نظرى

interested in

بـ

## Conjugations of irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

## Present

## Past simple

## Past participle

## Lesson 1

sew يخيط

sewed

sewn

speak يتحدث

spoke

spoken

write يكتب

wrote

written

## Lesson 2

show يعرض/يبين

showed

shown

pay يدفع (مالاً)

paid

paid

teach يعلم/يدرس

taught

taught

think يعتقد

thought

thought

## Definitions

## التعريفات

## Lesson 2

artist فنان

a person who paints or draws for a job

cartoon رسم متحرك

a funny drawing usually showing people or animals

costumes ملابس/أزياء خاصة

clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else

free مجاناً

without paying money

portrait	صورة فنية للوجه	a painting or photograph of a person's face
pottery	فخار/خزف	things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates
sculpture	نحت	art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things
script	سيناريو	the words of a play

### Language Notes

**talk to + someone + about + n/v.ing**

يتحدث إلى .... عن ....

- (1) • I can talk to the people at drama club about acting.

يكون الأفضل في

(2) (be) + the best at + v.ing/n.

- Lara is the best at doing make-up.

• Mariam is the best at English.

مهتم بـ

interested in + v.ing/n.

- (3) • I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> centuries.

يوصى بـ / يرشح

(4) recommend + v.ing/n.

- I recommend visiting the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art if you are in Cairo.



### Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My father is interested ..... reading newspapers.

- a) of                    b) on                    c) at                    d) in

2 I recommend ..... this restaurant. It's really cool!

- a) visit                    b) to visit                    c) visiting                    d) to visiting

3 My sister is the best at ..... clothes.

- a) sews                    b) to sew                    c) sew                    d) sewing

## Write it right



### How to write about a review of a museum

كيف تكتب نقداً عن متحف

- Egypt has many famous and interesting museums.
- There are new and ancient museums in Egypt, but I prefer the ancient ones.
- I visited **in** (المحافظة) (اسم المتحف).
- I liked it very much. You can see many arts there.
- The museum has **(ما يتميز به المتحف)**.
- My favourite thing was **(افضل ما رأيت في المتحف)**.
- If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

#### Example

#### A review of a museum

Egypt has many famous and interesting museums. There are new and ancient museums in Egypt, but I prefer the ancient ones. I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. I liked it very much. You can see many arts there. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. You can know a lot of information about life in the past from the statues there.

My favourite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

#### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of about (90) words on "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art".

#### "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

#### Writing tips

##### Use the active voice

In English, readers prefer

SVO sentence sequence:

**Subject, Verb, Object.**

This is the active voice. Passive sentences bore people.

نقدم المبني للمعلوم:

مثل قوله الانجليزية استخدام

عن المعلوم حيث ان كثرة استخدام

عن المجهول تسبب الممل.

## Lesson 1



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:** - Have you ever been a part of the end-of-year show?  
If yes, what did you do?

1. Read the chat messages about the activities on page 22.  
Was your idea in Discuss correct?

SB page 23

**Habiba:** Mrs Medhat says we can have an end-of-year show! It will be about the play<sup>(1)</sup> we read in the English class. I'm very excited, but I need help! Can anyone act<sup>(2)</sup> or write scripts<sup>(3)</sup>? We also need people who are able to do make-up, sew costumes<sup>(4)</sup>, paint scenery<sup>(5)</sup> and play instruments<sup>(6)</sup>.



**Lamar:** Cool! I can talk to the people at drama club<sup>(7)</sup> about acting.



**Azza:** Mariam and I know how to sew costumes! We love clothes and Lara is THE BEST at doing make-up!



**Lara:** YES!! I can do make-up.



**Manal:** I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up. Are you able to help with music, Talia?



**Talia:** Yes, I can play the music! It sounds fun. Habiba, you are the best at writing, can you write the script?



**Habiba:** Ok, I can try to write something ...  
You are all amazing!!!  
Thanks so much!



**Post-reading question:**

- Do you think the end-of-year show will be interesting? Why/Why not?

(1) مسرحية

(2) يمثل

(3) سيناريوهات

(4) يخيط ملابس

(5) يرسم مناظرا طبيعية

(6) يعزف على آلات موسيقية

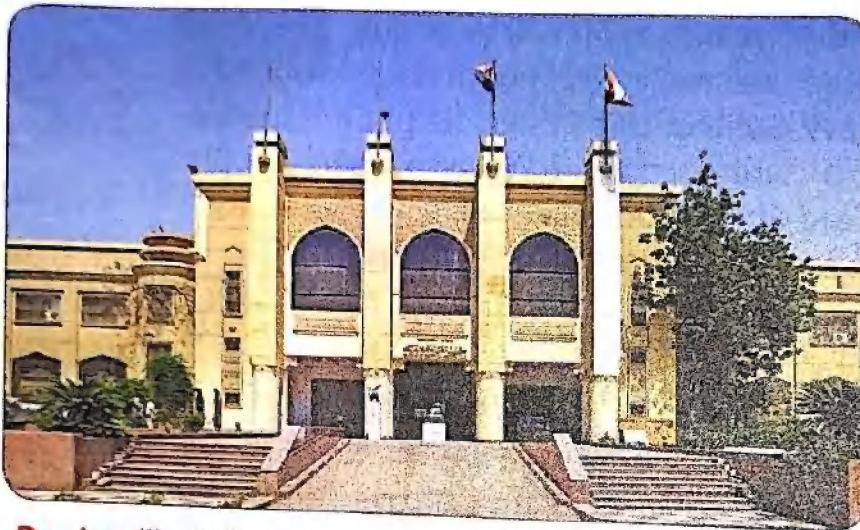
(7) نادي الدراما





**Pre-reading question:** - What do you know about the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art?

**3. Read the review and check the bolded words in your dictionary. Which types of art from Exercise 1 does it describe? SB page 24**



### Review<sup>(1)</sup> of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art

By Wagdy Badr

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient **art**<sup>(2)</sup>, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> **centuries**<sup>(3)</sup>.

From my point of view, the **artists**<sup>(4)</sup> were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There were **portraits**<sup>(5)</sup> of both important and normal Egyptian people. I thought the **cartoons**<sup>(6)</sup> were also really cool! I also saw lots of **sculptures**<sup>(7)</sup>, both big and small.

My favourite thing in the museum was a **painting**<sup>(8)</sup> called *Al Madina* by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very **colourful**<sup>(9)</sup>. The best thing about the museum is that it is **free**<sup>(10)</sup> to visit! I **recommend**<sup>(11)</sup> visiting it if you are in Cairo, but it's a good idea to go early when it is not very **busy**<sup>(12)</sup>.

### Post-reading question:

- Would you like to visit the Museum of Modern Art? Why/Why not?

- |                      |
|----------------------|
| (1) نقد              |
| (2) فن               |
| (3) قرون             |
| (4) فنانين           |
| (5) لوحات فنية للوجه |
| (6) رسوم متحركة      |
| (7) منحوتات          |
| (8) لوحة ملونة       |
| (9) زاهي الألوان     |
| (10) مجاناً          |
| (11) يومصى/يرشح      |
| (12) مزحيم           |

## Lesson 2



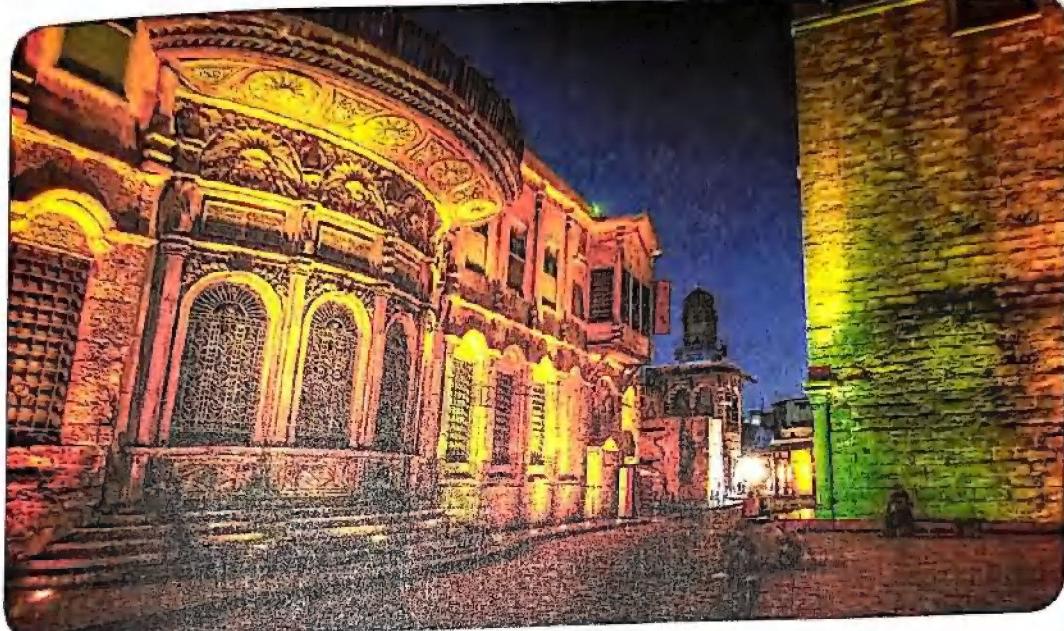
## Reading Text

## Pre-reading question:

- What do you think of the Textile Museum?

2. Complete the review of a museum with these words.

WB page 85



### Review of the Textile Museum<sup>(1)</sup> in Cairo

By Injy Zaki



Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. From my point of view, the **statues**<sup>(2)</sup> showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past. My favourite thing was the **Islamic area**<sup>(3)</sup> where you can see different kinds of **calligraphy**<sup>(4)</sup>. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

#### Post-reading questions:

1. Where is the Textile Museum?
2. What can you see in the Islamic area?

متحف النسيج (1)

تعاليل (2)

منطقة إسلامية (3)

فن الخط (4)

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My mother likes to ..... our clothes at home.  
 a) saw      b) sew      c) sow      d) sue
- 2 I went to the theatre last week and saw an exciting ..... .  
 a) match      b) game      c) sport      d) play
- 3 My friend Hadeer is good at writing ..... for plays.  
 a) scripts      b) scenery      c) costumes      d) instruments
- 4 I went to my brother's school party and the pupils wore nice ..... .  
 a) photos      b) scripts      c) costumes      d) statues
- 5 I asked my sister to ..... the phone because I was doing my homework.  
 a) reply      b) use      c) answer      d) question
- 6 I like walking along the Nile to see the beautiful ..... .  
 a) rubbish      b) scenery      c) pollution      d) traffic
- 7 Most girls like to try ..... make-up.  
 a) doing      b) making      c) writing      d) acting
- 8 The teacher chose Marwa to ..... in the new play.  
 a) make      b) do      c) write      d) act
- 9 All children like watching ..... on TV.  
 a) cartons      b) cartoons      c) schools      d) clubs
- 10 Girls like to wear ..... clothes.  
 a) untidy      b) damaged      c) colourful      d) ugly
- 11 A ..... is a painting or photograph of a person's face.  
 a) statue      b) portrait      c) scenery      d) play
- 12 A ..... is a period of a hundred years.  
 a) century      b) country      c) scenery      d) centre
- 13 My dress is ..... , so my mother is sewing it.  
 a) colourful      b) new      c) damaged      d) modern
- 14 My father is good at languages. He's able to ..... three languages very well.  
 a) talk      b) say      c) tell      d) speak
- 15 I ..... reading Oliver Twist. It's great.  
 a) advise      b) recommend      c) describe      d) act



## Language

### Ability

القدرة

هناك عدة طرق للتعبير عن قدرتك لفعل شيء ما

1

**Subject** + **can + inf.** (يستطيع أن) المصدر + الفاعل

Ex: - I can **paint** scenery if you want.

- My mum **can sew** clothes.

#### Negative النفي

**Subject + can't + inf.** (المصدر + الفاعل)

Ex: - Sama **can't play** chess.

- My sisters **can't do** make-up.

#### السؤال Interrogative

**Can + subject + inf.** (....؟ المصدر + الفاعل)

Ex: A: Can Mohamed **swim** well?

B: Yes, he can.

2

**Subject + am/is/are + able to + inf.** (يكون قادراً أن) المصدر + الفاعل

Ex: - I am **able to play** the piano.

- Nabil **is able to play** tennis.

- We are **able to act** in that play.

#### Negative النفي

**Subject + am not/isn't/aren't + able to + inf.**

Ex: - I am **not able to see** you again.

- She **isn't able to sew** clothes.

- Ali and Nabila **aren't able to come** to the party.

#### السؤال Interrogative

**Am/Is/Are + subject + able to + inf.?**

Ex: A: Is your brother **able to ride** a bike?

B: No, he **isn't**.

A: Are you **able to sew** your clothes?

B: Yes, I **am**.

3

**Subject + know/knows + how to + inf.** (يعرف كيف أن) المصدر + الفاعل

Ex: - I **know how to paint** scenery.

- Basmala **knows how to write** a script.

#### Negative النفي

**Subject + don't/doesn't + know how to + inf.** (لا يعرف كيف أن)

Ex: - They **don't know how to play** instruments.

- He **doesn't know how to write** an email.

#### السؤال Interrogative

**Do/Does + subject + know how to + inf.** (هل يعرف كيف أن؟)

Ex: - Do you **know how to paint** scenery?

- Does your father **know how to drive** a car?

## Language Exercises

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 He's amazing, he ..... speak five languages.  
 a) can      b) able to      c) knows how      d) know how
- 2 She's seven years old, but she ..... to read yet.  
 a) can      b) isn't able      c) doesn't know      d) can't
- 3 I ..... lift this box - it's too heavy!  
 a) doesn't know    b) don't know    c) isn't able to    d) can't
- 4 ..... John know how to drive a car?  
 a) Can      b) Does      c) Is      d) Do
- 5 Sally can ..... a plan for the next weekend.  
 a) makes      b) making      c) made      d) make
- 6 Are you ..... remember your dreams?  
 a) able to      b) can      c) know how to      d) knows how
- 7 ..... you come to the club tonight?  
 a) Do      b) Can      c) Are      d) Have
- 8 I think my computer is broken. I don't know ..... send any emails.  
 a) can      b) how      c) how to      d) to
- 9 I'm ..... start work tomorrow.  
 a) can      b) able to      c) able      d) know how
- 10 I ..... see without my glasses.  
 a) don't know    b) not able to    c) no able to    d) can't

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1 He ..... (not / know) how to play an instrument.
- 2 They ..... (able to) sew costumes.
- 3 My little sister can't ..... (feeding) herself.
- 4 My brother ..... (know) how to use a computer.
- 5 Samir ..... (not / able) to send an email.
- 6 ..... (she / know) how to cook?



## Speaking

### 1. Expressions of description

تعابيرات الوصف

famous / مشهور / ancient / اثري / really good / حفاظ جيد / important / هام / normal / عادي  
 really cool / مزدحم / مجاناً / زاهي الألوان / ا coloreful / صغير / small / كبير / big / حفاظ رائع / really cool

- Egypt is famous for its ancient art.
- The artists were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now.

### 2. Expressions of giving an opinion

تعابيرات اعطاء الرأي

اعتقد / من وجهة نظرى / I thought

- From my point of view, the artists were really good.
- I thought the cartoons were also really cool!

### 3. Expressions of preference

تعابيرات التفضيل

/ إنه جعلنى أشعر بسعادة / الشيء المفضل لي / It made me feel happy  
 My favourite thing / أفضل شيء عن

- My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said.
- It made me feel happy because it was very colourful.
- The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit!

### 4. Expressions of giving a recommendation

تعابيرات اعطاء التوصية

إنها فكرة جيدة / It's a good idea to / اوصى به

- I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries.
- It's a good idea to do sports.

## Speaking Exercise

**Complete the following dialogue:**

"Osama and Islam are talking about their plan for the next weekend."

**Osama :** Where are you going to spend your weekend?

**Islam :** (1) ..... the Egyptian Museum of Modern

Art in Cairo.

**Osama :** Great! (2) .....

**Islam :** No, I didn't visit it before. It's my first visit.

**Osama :** From my (3) ..... , you'll like it.

**Islam :** Why do you think so?

**Osama :** I thought the artists were really good.

**Islam :** (4) ..... can I visit it?

**Osama :** (5) ..... to go early when it is not very busy.

**Islam :** That's great. I'll go at 8 am.

تطبيق الأضواء

ALADWAA

اخْتُمْ نَفْسَكِ الْآنَ مَعَ أَكْبَرِ بَنْكِ الْأَسْئَلَةِ التَّفَاعُلِيَّةِ

مِنْ خَلَالْ خَاصِيَّةِ مَدَاكَةِ الْمَتَهَانَ.



حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خالل

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)

# Lessons 1 & 2

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

"Lamar and Talia are talking about the end-of-year show."

5

Lamar : Mrs Hania says we can have an end-of-year show!

Talia : Great! (1).....?

Lamar : It will be about the play we read in the English class.

Talia : I'm very excited!

Lamar : We need help. (2)..... anyone act or write scripts?

Talia : Yes, Lamar is (3)..... act.

Lamar : What about writing scripts?

Talia : Habiba (4)..... to write scripts.

Lamar : We also need people who are able (5).....

Talia : We could call Azza to know if she knows how to paint scenery.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1 The students at school are ..... ready for the end-of-year party.

- a)** acting      **b)** taking      **c)** getting      **d)** writing

2 Do you know the name of the most famous concert ..... in Egypt?

- a)** hall      **b)** hole      **c)** whole      **d)** wool

3 We want anyone who knows how to ..... scenery.

- a)** write      **b)** act      **c)** do      **d)** paint

4 I love clothes, so I'm the best ..... sewing.

- a)** at      **b)** on      **c)** in      **d)** with

5 I like playing music. It ..... fun.

- a)** voices      **b)** sounds      **c)** stands      **d)** gets

6 A/An ..... is a person who paints or draws for a job.

- a)** artist      **b)** firefighter      **c)** actor      **d)** guide

7 I went to the museum and saw many ..... there.

- a)** halls      **b)** games      **c)** plays      **d)** sculptures

**UNIT 9**

- 8 Not all countries are ..... to make new cars.  
 a) able      b) can      c) know      d) must
- 9 My brother ..... draw much better than me.  
 a) know how      b) knows how      c) is able      d) can
- 10 Don't worry about me, I can ..... care of myself.  
 a) take      b) takes      c) taking      d) talked

**3** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 We can ..... (had) an end-of-year show.
- 2 Mariam and I ..... (knows) how to sew costumes.
- 3 ..... (you /able) to help with music, Talia?
- 4 Basmala ..... (know) how to paint scenery.

**4** Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

**"A review of a museum you visited"**

WB

6

25

**Assess Your Progress**

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	..... ..... .....
(1-14) (15-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-25)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-55)	..... ..... .....

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26-28 WB pages 86 & 87



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

Lesson 3

### المفردات الرئيسية

#### Musical instruments

#### الآلات الموسيقية

cello	التشيلو	clarinet
piano	بيانو	trombone
trumpet	بوق	violin
Arabic music	الموسيقى العربية	international
blind	أعمى	musician
classical	قديم/كلاسيكي	orchestra
deaf	صم	public transport
disabled	معاق	radio reporter
		عاليٍ/دولٍ
		موسيقٍي/عازف (شخص)
		أوركسترا
		المواصلات العامة
		مراسل إذاعي
		radio report
		skill
		special
		surprising
		reporter
		تقرير إذاعي
		مهارة
		مميز/خاص
		مدهش/مفاجئ

# UNIT 9

## Lesson 4

character	شخصية	newspaper	جريدة/صحيفة	reply (yied)	رد
cry (yied)	ي بك/يصرخ	painter	رسام	rival	منافس
hide	يختفي/يختبئ	proud (of)	فخور (بـ)	strange	غريب
hug (ged)	يعانق	relationship	علاقة	wonder (ed)	يتساءل/يتعجب

## Additional Vocabulary

## المفردات الإضافية

## Lesson 3

all day	طوال اليوم	imagine (d)	يتخيل	person	شخص
Braille	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	interview	مقابلة شخصية	recently	ديثاً
concert	حفلة موسيقية	invent (ed)	يخترع	traffic light	إشارة المرور
France	فرنسا	object	شيء	wheelchair	كرس متحرك
Frenchman	رجل فرنسي	Oman	عمان		

behind	خلف/وراء	living room	حجرة المعيشة	writer	كاتب
guess (ed)	ي تخمن	story	قصة		

## Language Expressions

## العبارات اللغوية

## Lesson 3

become ▶ blind	يصبح أعمى	make ▶ notes	يبون ملاحظات
have ▶ difficulties	لديه صعوبات	play ▶ music	يلعب الموسيقى
in the 1820s	في عشرينيات القرن التاسع عشر	read ▶ music	يقرأ الموسيقى
play ▶ concerts	يعزف في حفلات موسيقية	the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra	فرقة أوركسترا النور والأمل

## Lesson 4

do ▶ something well	يفعل شيئاً جيداً	listen ▶ carefully	يسمع بعناية
give ▶ a hug	يعطى عناقًا	swap ▶ roles	يتبادل الأدوار

## دروf الجر

## Prepositions

Lesson 3

a special kind of

نوع خاص من

in a wheelchair

على كرسي متحرك

on the street

في الشارع

a special school for

مدرسة خاصة لـ

on public transport

في المواصلات العامة

shout at

يصرخ في وجه

for example على سبيل المثال

on the floor

على الأرضية

with hands

باستخدام اليد

Lesson 4

at the end

في النهاية

jump (ed) up

يقفز لأعلى

come into

يدخل

throw down

يرمى أسفل

## Conjugations of irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

## Present

## Past simple

## Past participle

Lesson 3

leave

يترك/يغادر

left

left

Lesson 4

fall

يقع

fell

fallen

hide

يخفى/يخفى

hid

hidden

hurt

يصيب/يؤلم/يؤذى

hurt

hurt

sit down

يجلس

sat down

sat down

throw

يرمى

threw

thrown

## Definitions

## التعريفات

Lesson 3

blind

اعمى

not able to see

deaf

صم

not able to hear

disabled

معاق

not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can

## Language Notes

### 1 Adjectives ended in (-ing) and (-ed):

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) أو (ed)

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) عند وصف مسبب الصفة للأخرين.

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) عند وصف الشعور بالصفة.

- The lion is standing in front of the goats. The lion is **frightening** and the goats are **frightened**.
- The boys are wearing masks in front of the girls. The boys are **frightening** and the girls are **frightened**.

### 2

### the piano / the violin / the cello / the flute

الأدوات الموسيقية يأتي قبلها (the) إذا جاءت بغرض العزف/ الاستماع/ التعلم

- She is able to play **the** piano very well.
- My father bought me **a** piano.

### 3

### special

خاص/مميز (لفئة من الناس ولكن ليست ملك لهم)

### private

خاص (ذو ملكية خاصة بشخص)

- He goes to a **special** school for the blind.
- That's my **private** Facebook account.



### Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I met many ..... people.

- a) interest  
c) interesting

- b) interested  
d) interests

2 I saw ..... flute that I want to buy.

- a) a  
c) no article  
3 She is learning how to play ..... cello.  
a) a  
c) no article

- b) the  
d) an  
b) the  
d) an

## Write it right

### How to write about a person you're proud of كيف تكتب عن شخص تفخر به

- (الشخص) is the person I'm proud of.
- He/She's (العمر) years old.
- He/She's (الوظيفة).
- (الأفعال التي يقوم بها).
- He/She spends his/her free time (الوقت).
- He/She's an excellent adviser.
- He/She often gives me suggestions and a lot of advice to help me with my problems.

#### Example

#### A person you are proud of

Of all my family, my mother is the person I am proud of most. She is in her forties. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. At work, she is respected and admired by all of her friends. Furthermore, she is a very good cook. I am really proud of her. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. She often gives me suggestions and a lot of advice to help me with my problems. She is not only my mother but she is also my good example to follow. For all these reasons, I always love and take pride in my mother.

#### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of about (90) words on "Your hero":

"My hero"

#### Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of sentences organised around a central topic.

- الفقرة هي عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل المنظمة حول موضوع واحد.



## Pre-listening question:

- How can the blind read?

**2. Listen to a radio report about the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra.**  
**What is special about the orchestra?**

**SB page 26**



**Radio Reporter:** Today I'm visiting a very **special<sup>(1)</sup>** school in Cairo. This is a music school for girls. All the students study their **normal<sup>(2)</sup>** subjects in the morning and then practise their **instruments<sup>(3)</sup>** in the afternoon. Many of the students at this school join an orchestra called the *Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra*. This **orchestra<sup>(4)</sup>** plays **concerts<sup>(5)</sup>** in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. What is most special about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are **blind<sup>(6)</sup>**!

The orchestra plays **international<sup>(7)</sup>** **classical<sup>(8)</sup>** and Arabic music. All the students learn to read the music using Braille, a type of reading you can do with your hands. Then they have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time. Let's go to meet some of the **musicians<sup>(9)</sup>**.

- (1) خاص / مميز
- (2) عادي / طبيعي
- (3) آلات موسيقية
- (4) مجموعة العازفين
- (5) حفلات موسيقية
- (6) كيف
- (7) دولي / عالمي
- (8) كلاسيكي
- (9) موسيقيين

## Post-listening question:

- Where does the *Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra* play concerts?

## Lesson 3



## Reading and listening

## Pre-listening question:

- What's your favourite musical instrument?

## 1. Listen and choose the correct words.

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is at a school for blind girls in Cairo. Eman Badr is one of the musicians. She is able to play the violin very well. She started playing when she was six. Eman became blind when she was two years old. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves music and being with her friends. Recently, she visited Oman and France with the orchestra.

I think the orchestra is amazing. It must be very difficult to read music with your hands and then remember it. I would like to go to one of their concerts.

## Post-listening questions:

1. What musical instrument does Eman play?
2. When did Eman become blind?

WB page 86



## Life Skills

Try to help disabled people by remembering the problems that they can have. Tick the things that you think will help a disabled person.

- ( ) Do not leave bags on the floor on public transport.
- ( ) Tell a blind person about objects on the street.
- ( ) Shout at a person if you think they can't hear you.
- ( ) Ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help.



**Pre-reading question:**

- What's your favourite story?

**2. Read the story and check your answers to Exercise 1.**

**SB page 28**

### Little Women

**By Louisa May Alcott**

Meg, Beth and Amy were sewing when Jo came into the room with a newspaper<sup>(1)</sup>. She sat down and started to read it.

"Anything interesting?" asked Meg.

"Oh, only a story," Jo replied.

"What's it called?" asked Beth. She wondered<sup>(2)</sup> why Jo was hiding<sup>(3)</sup> behind the newspaper.

"It's called *The Rival Painters*," said Jo.

"Why don't you read it to us?" asked Amy.

Jo started to read it very quickly. The girls listened carefully. The story was very sad.

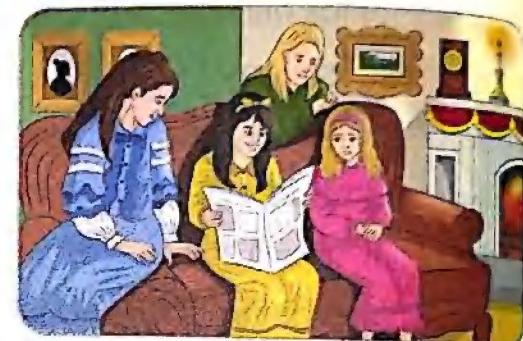
"I liked it," said Meg at the end. She was crying<sup>(4)</sup> a little. "Isn't it strange that the characters<sup>(5)</sup> are called two of our favourite names?"

Beth saw Jo's face. "Who wrote the story?" she asked.

Jo jumped up, threw the paper down and said, "Your sister!"

"You?" shouted Meg. "It's very good!" said Amy.

"I knew it! I knew it! Oh, I am so proud!" said Beth, hugging<sup>(6)</sup> her sister.



جريدة (1)

يتساءل (2)

تحتني (3)

بيكي (4)

شخصيات (5)

يعانق (6)

### Post-reading questions:

1. Why do you think Jo reads the story before she tells them she wrote it?
2. Why does Beth say she is "so proud"?

## Vocabulary Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 Young people should have many ..... to be able to get a good job.  
 a) skills      b) friends      c) artists      d) skulls
- 2 My brother likes to play in a good ..... with good musicians. He plays the cello.  
 a) team      b) group      c) orchestra      d) hall
- 3 He's blind, so he goes to a ..... school for the blind.  
 a) private      b) special      c) general      d) public
- 4 He had a terrible accident last month and it left him .....  
 a) messy      b) noisy      c) happy      d) disabled
- 5 We went to a big party last night and we found it ..... It was cool!  
 a) surprising      b) boring      c) terrible      d) horrible
- 6 Reda likes music. He wants to be a .....  
 a) musical      b) musician      c) waiter      d) writer
- 7 A ..... person is the person who can't hear.  
 a) blind      b) deaf      c) proud      d) happy
- 8 My little sister always ..... my father a hug when she sees him.  
 a) has      b) gives      c) takes      d) lends
- 9 My brother always ..... my things and I can't find them.  
 a) hits      b) appears      c) disappears      d) hides
- 10 My grandfather likes listening to songs by Om Kalthom. He likes ..... music.  
 a) international      b) pop      c) rock      d) classical
- 11 The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra ..... concerts all around the world.  
 a) plays      b) reads      c) meets      d) calls
- 12 When I bought my son a mobile, he jumped .....  
 a) down      b) over      c) into      d) up
- 13 My teacher asked me to ..... notes of the important points.  
 a) have      b) see      c) take      d) do
- 14 My father is a good man and I'm so proud ..... be his son.  
 a) of      b) to      c) on      d) with

# Lessons 3 & 4

## General Exercises

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

4

- 1 When was Braille born?  
a) In 1908.      b) In 1980.      c) In 1809.      d) In 1890.
- 2 How old was he when he became blind?  
a) Three years.      b) Four years.      c) Five years.      d) Six years.
- 3 How old was Louis when he invented his system?  
a) 12.      b) 13.      c) 14.      d) 15.
- 4 How did he become blind?  
a) Had an illness.      b) Had an accident.  
c) Cried a lot.      d) Watched too much TV.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

- 1 ..... transport is very busy.  
a) Special      b) Private      c) General      d) Public
- 2 Mr Adel didn't let me come ..... the class because I was late.  
a) to      b) from      c) into      d) round
- 3 The disabled can use ..... to be able to move.  
a) wheelchairs      b) armchairs      c) wheels      d) sofas
- 4 The ..... is my favourite musical instrument.  
a) headphone      b) trombone      c) screen      d) charger
- 5 I have a good ..... with my friends.  
a) information      b) friend      c) skill      d) relationship
- 6 When you talk to an older person, don't shout ..... them.  
a) for      b) at      c) to      d) into
- 7 My brother is a radio reporter and he does ..... with famous people.  
a) interviews      b) meetings      c) reviews      d) views
- 8 Are you ..... swim, Kamal?  
a) able      b) know      c) able to      d) know to

Watch, listen and make

- 9 My uncle can ..... more than two languages.  
 a) speak      b) speaking      c) to speak      d) to speaking
- 10 Mona ..... answer the phone because she is too busy.  
 a) can      b) isn't able      c) knows how      d) can't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 ..... (you/know) how to play an instrument?  
 2 OK, I can ..... (tried) to write something.  
 3 Which musical instrument ..... (you/play)?  
 4 Manar ..... (not/know) how to write a script.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Basmala to tell her about the person you like most. Your name is Huda.  
 Your email address is [huda@hotmail.com](mailto:huda@hotmail.com). Your friend's email address is [basmala@yahoo.com](mailto:basmala@yahoo.com).

4

6

24

### Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30  (1-14) (15-24) (25-30)	24  (1-12) (13-20) (21-24)	54  (1-25) (26-45) (46-54)	

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 29 - 31 WB pages 88 - 90

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### العفردات الرئيسية

#### Lesson 5

conversation	محادثة	information	معلومات	offer (ed)	يعرض
event	حدث	invitation	دعوة	request (ed)(v/n)	يطلب/طلب
<b>Lesson 6</b>					
action	عمل/أداء	dinosaur	ديناصور	pilot	طيار
actor	ممثل	escape (d)	يهرّب	reviewer	نقد
actress	ممثلة	film review	نقد فيلم	scary	مخيف
adventure film	فيلم مغامرة	land (ed)	يهدّد	scientist	عالم
die (d)	يموت	main	أساسى/رئيسى	theme park	متزهدة/مدينة ترفيهية

### Additional Vocabulary

### العفردات الإضافية

#### Lesson 5

sandwich	ساندويتش	table tennis	تنس طاولة	table tennis balls	كرات تنس الطاولة
----------	----------	--------------	-----------	--------------------	------------------

#### Lesson 6

amazing	رائع/مفهش	guitar	جيتار	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
boring	الممل	happen (ed)	يحدث	schoolboy	للمبتدئ
British	بريطانى	horrible	رهيب/مروع	stay (ed)	يبيق/يعكث/يقيم/يظل
dark	ظلم	interesting	شيق/مثير	summary	ملخص
enjoy (ed)	يسعد بـ	nearly	تقريباً	tower	برج
exciting	مثير	plastic	بلاستيك	writer	كاتب

### Different meanings for a word

park (n/v)	حديقة / يركن سيارة (v)	star	نجمة / نجم سينمائى	view	وجهة نظر / منظر
------------	------------------------	------	--------------------	------	-----------------

**Language Expressions****التعابيرات اللغوية**

<b>Lesson 5</b>	have ▶ a picnic	يقوم بتنزهة	watch/see ▶ a film	يشاهد فيلماً
<b>Lesson 6</b>	do ▶ calligraphy	يؤدي فن حسن الخط	present ▶ an opinion	يقدم رأياً
fly ▶ a kite	يطير طائرة	stars of the film	نجوم الفيلم	
look ▶ very real	يبدو حقيقةً جداً	stop ▶ fires	يوقف الحرائق	
make ▶ films	يصنع أفلاماً	take ▶ photos	يلقط صوراً	
make ▶ pottery/sculptures	يصنع الفخار/المنحوتات	write ▶ stories	يكتب قصص	

**حروف الجر****Prepositions**

<b>Lesson 5</b>	ask for	يطلب	in the garden	في حديقة المنزل	فـى الراديو
come to	يأتى إلى		invite to	يدعو إلى شـء / مـكان +	
<b>Lesson 6</b>	from the top of	من قمة ....	in my opinion	في رأيـي	بدلاً من
				instead of	

**تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة****Conjugations of irregular verbs**

Present	Past simple	Past participle
<b>Lesson 5</b> bring	يحضر	brought
<b>Lesson 6</b> fly	يطير	flew

**التعريفات****Definitions**

<b>Lesson 6</b> action	عمل / أداء	the things that happen in a film
escape	يهرّب	to leave a place that you should stay in
review	نقد	to present a summary, opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play
theme park	متنزه / مدينة ترفيهية	a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.

## Write it right

### How to write about a film review

كيف تكتب نقد فيلم

- In my free time, I like watching movies.
- I love all kinds of movies like American, Indian and Moroccan movies.
- I watched many films. However, the best movie I watched was (اسم الفيلم).
- It came out in (تاريخ إنتاجه).
- The director is (اسم المخرج).
- I think (اسم الفيلم) was amazing.
- I thought the (نوع الفيلم) was exciting and my favourite thing was (الشيء المفضل بالنسبة إليك).
- I recommend this film if you like (استخدم تصف توصف نوع الفيلم).

### Writing tips

#### To contrast:

Use although, yet, but, despite, even though, however, in contrast, in spite of, on the contrary, on the other hand, still and though

في بعض الأوقات يجب أن توضح الاختلاف والمقارنة أو التناقض لهذا يجب عليك استخدام أحد التعبيرات السابقة.

#### Example:



**To** : ghada@student.com

**From** : dina@student.com

**Subject** : A review of a film

**Dear Ghada,**

I hope you're well. I'd like to tell you about my favourite film. In my free time, I like watching movies. I love all kinds of movies like American, Indian and Moroccan movies. I watched many films. However, the best movie I watched was "Wonder Woman". It came out on June 2<sup>nd</sup>, 2017. The director is Patty Jenkins. Before she was Wonder Woman, she was Diana, princess of the amazons. I think Wonder Woman was amazing. I thought the action was exciting and my favourite thing was when she finally discovered her full power. I recommend this film if you like exciting and action. Write soon.

**Yours,**  
**Dina**

#### Check point:

**Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Sara on "Your favourite movie". Your name's Ola. Your email address is ola@gmail.com. Your friend's email is sara@yahoo.com.**

## Lesson 5



## Listening Text

## Pre-listening question:

- What kind of films do you like watching?

**2. Listen to a telephone conversation between two friends and complete the notes.**

SB page 29



**Rawia** : Hi, Warda!

**Warda** : Hi Rawia, how's it going?

**Rawia** : Fine thanks, how are you?

**Warda** : Yeah, I'm good. I was wondering if you would like to come to watch

a film at my house tonight.

**Rawia** : Yeah, cool, I'd love to. Which film?

**Warda** : I've got the film of a famous book: would you like to watch *Little Women*?

**Rawia** : Oh, yes please – I love the book! Shall I bring some drinks or snacks?

**Warda** : I have lots of snacks but not much to drink. Could you bring some fruit juice?

**Rawia** : Of course, no problem. What time should I come?

**Warda** : About 7 pm.

**Rawia** : Great! See you then.

## Post-listening question:

- What's Warda inviting Rawia for?

## Lesson 6



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:** - What type of books do you like to read?

**3. Put this review of a book into the correct order. WB page 89**

**A review of Lord of the Flies**

*Lord of the Flies* is an adventure story<sup>(1)</sup>. It is by the British writer<sup>(2)</sup> William Golding.

It is about some schoolboys who have to live on an island<sup>(3)</sup> after their plane lands in the sea and the pilot<sup>(4)</sup> dies<sup>(5)</sup>. How will the boys live on the island, and will they escape<sup>(6)</sup>?



I thought the action<sup>(7)</sup> was exciting and many amazing things happen to the boys. My favourite part was early in the story, when the children enjoy their time on the island. But, in my opinion, some of the children are horrible and I did not like them.

I recommend the book because it makes you think about what it is like to live only with other children, but it is not a very happy story.

(1) فلم مقامرة

(2) كاتب

(3) جزيرة

(4) طيار

(5) بعثة

(6) يهرب

(7) لندن / عمل

## Lesson 6



## Reading Text

**1. Read the film review. Does the writer like the film or not? SB page 30**

**A review of Jurassic World**

*Jurassic World* is an adventure film<sup>(1)</sup>. The stars<sup>(2)</sup> of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a theme park<sup>(3)</sup> where scientists<sup>(4)</sup> have helped dinosaurs to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs escape. What will happen?



(1) فيلم مقامرة

(2) نجوم الفيلم

(3) متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية

(4) علماء

(5) مخيف

I thought the action was exciting and my favourite thing was the scary<sup>(5)</sup> dinosaurs; they look very real. But, in my opinion the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story.

**Post-reading question:** - What type of film is "Jurassic World"?

**Vocabulary Exercises**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I don't like that film. It was .....  
 a) amazing      b) nice      c) cool      d) scary
- 2 I had a/an ..... from my friend to his birthday party.  
 a) request      b) invitation      c) offer      d) recommendation
- 3 I like ..... films. They're exciting.  
 a) sad      b) terrible      c) horrible      d) adventure
- 4 Many thieves tried to ..... , but the police stopped them.  
 a) escape      b) save      c) collect      d) recycle
- 5 My teacher asked me to tell the class the ..... points of the lesson.  
 a) unimportant      b) main      c) scary      d) damaged
- 6 I like my friend as she always ..... to help me when I need.  
 a) offers      b) requests      c) advises      d) recommends
- 7 Adel Imam is a famous ..... . He shares in many films.  
 a) actor      b) painter      c) writer      d) player
- 8 My friend is very sad because his grandfather ..... yesterday.  
 a) died      b) lived      c) stayed      d) slept
- 9 I went to a theme ..... and rode on the big wheel. It was exciting.  
 a) bark      b) park      c) brake      d) break
- 10 I liked that film. I thought the ..... was exciting.  
 a) move      b) movement      c) motion      d) action
- 11 The police told my father not to ..... his car here.  
 a) park      b) bark      c) break      d) brake
- 12 There's a beautiful ..... from my bedroom window.  
 a) review      b) site      c) opinion      d) view
- 13 I read a film ..... to know what the film is about.  
 a) review      b) revision      c) view      d) opinion
- 14 I don't know how much money he has. It's ..... 100 pounds.  
 a) near      b) nearly      c) nearby      d) rarely



 Speaking

## 1. Invitation

- I was wondering if you would like to .....?  
 - Would you like to .....?

الدعوة  
تساءل أن كنت تود أن .....؟  
هل تود أن .....؟

**EX:** A: Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house?

- B: Yes, I would love to.  
 A: Would you like to play table tennis?  
 B: Yes, please.

B: No, thanks.

## 2. Offer

- Shall I .....?

العرض  
هل .....؟

**EX:** A: Shall I bring some table tennis balls?

- B: No, he's got those. B: Yes, please.

## 3. Request

- Could you bring some .....?

هل يمكن أن تحضر لي بعض .....؟

**EX:** A: Could you bring some food?

B: Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches.

## 4. Asking for information

- What time should I .....?

متى يجب أن .....؟

**EX:** A: What time should I come?

B: At 10 p.m.

طلب معلومات

## Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

"Helal is inviting Mazen to come to his home."

Mazen : Hello, Helal. How are things?

Helal : Fine, Mazen. (1) ..... if you would like to come to my house?

Mazen : Yes, (2) ..... . Why?

Helal : We can watch the match together. Would you like to watch it with me?

Mazen : (3) ..... . Shall I bring food with me?

Helal : No, but could you bring your tablet?

Mazen : Of course. (4) ..... ?

Helal : At seven thirty pm.

Mazen : Great! Shall I bring my camera?

Helal : Yes, (5) ..... later.

# Lessons 5 & 6

## General Exercises

5

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

"Sami is inviting Omar to his house."

Sami : Hi Omar, I was wondering if you were busy tonight?

Omar : No, I'm not busy. Why?

Sami : (1) ..... come to my house to listen to some music?

Omar : Yes, that sounds cool! (2) ..... bring anything?

Sami : Yes, could you bring your guitar and we can play some songs, too?

Omar : (3) ..... idea! What about bringing some sandwiches

with me?

Sami : (4) .....

Omar : What time should I come?

Sami : At about 8 pm.

Omar : Okay! I'll be there on time. (5) ..... then!

10

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I'd like to listen to music ..... the radio.

- a) on
- b) at
- c) in
- d) of

2 A firefighter is the person who ..... fires.

- a) keeps
- b) stays
- c) saves
- d) stops

3 She wants to write well, so she decided to ..... calligraphy.

- a) make
- b) do
- c) have
- d) give

4 We are going to go out next weekend to ..... a picnic.

- a) have
- b) give
- c) do
- d) make

5 We should ..... things such as bags, toys and other things to reuse them again.

- a) cycle
- b) recycle
- c) throw
- d) go

6 To ..... is to leave a place that you should stay in.

- a) escape
- b) take
- c) stay
- d) land

7 The plane ..... safely and all people were happy.

- a) died
- b) threw
- c) landed
- d) fell

149

UNIT 9

- 8 I'm able to draw and ..... .  
a) paint      b) painting      c) to painting      d) painted

9 She ..... know how to cook at all.  
a) isn't      b) hasn't      c) doesn't      d) can't

10 I can write English well, but my sister ..... .  
a) can      b) can't      c) is      d) isn't

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1 My brother can ..... (cooking) very well. He is a chef in a French restaurant.

2 Said ..... (know) how to drive a car.

3 Nabil and Abdullah ..... (able to) play together, they are free.

4 My sister ..... (not/know) how to write a script.

**4** Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

#### **"A review of a book"**

WR

四

25

## **Assess Your Progress**

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	..... ..... .....
(1-14) (15-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-25)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-55)	..... ..... .....



## Video Script

**Narrator:** Can you sing? Do you know how to dance? Perhaps you can act. But are you able to sing and act at the same time?

Actors who appear<sup>(1)</sup> in opera<sup>(2)</sup> can do all of these things. An opera is a type of play<sup>(3)</sup> in which the actors sing and sometimes dance. There is also lots of music.

People can watch an opera in a special theatre<sup>(4)</sup> called an opera house, like this famous one in Sydney. There are many famous operas, such as *Carmen*, *The Barber of Seville* and *Tosca*. Opera singers such as Maria Callas, Placido Domingo and Luciano Pavarotti are able to sing really well.

Guiseppe Verdi was an Italian<sup>(5)</sup> who wrote some important operas in the 19<sup>th</sup> century<sup>(6)</sup>. One of his most famous operas is called *Aida*.

*Aida* is set in Ancient Egypt. It is about a soldier<sup>(7)</sup> who loves a princess<sup>(8)</sup>. It was first performed<sup>(9)</sup> at the Khedivia Opera House in Cairo in 1871. At this time, this opera house was the biggest in Africa and one of the most important opera houses in the world. It was destroyed<sup>(10)</sup> in a fire in 1971, but a new opera house opened in 1988. It is called the Cairo Opera House. This is a beautiful building on Gezira Island.

Thousands of people come here every year to watch operas and other performances<sup>(11)</sup>, such as ballet<sup>(12)</sup> or music.

Do you like opera?

يظهر (1)

الأوبرا (2)

مسرحية (3)

مسرح (4)

إيطال (5)

قرن (6)

جندي (7)

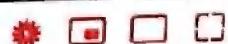
اميرة (8)

يؤدي (9)

يُصر (10)

عروض (11)

فن الباليه (12)



# Unit 9 Review



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

act (ed)	يمثل	disabled	معاق	public transport	الموصلات العامة
action	عمل/أداء	drawing	رسم	radio report	تقدير إذاعي
activities	أنشطة	escape (d)	يهرب	radio reporter	مراسل إذاعي
actor	ممثل	event	حدث	recommend (ed)	يوصي/يرشح
actress	ممثلة	film review	نقد فيلم	relationship	علاقة
adventure film	فيلم مغامرة	free	مجاناً	reply (yied)	برد
ancient	قديم جداً/أثري	hide	يخفي/يختبئ	request (ed)	طلب/طلب
Arabic music	الموسيقى العربية	hug (ged)	يعانق	review	تقد
art	فن	information	معلومات	rival	منافس
artist	فنان	invitation	دعوة	scary	مخيف
blind	أعمى	Islamic area	منطقة إسلامية	scenery	منظر طبيعي
busy	مزدحم	land (ed)	يهدّط	scientist	عالم
calligraphy	فن الخط	main	أساسي/رئيسي	script	نص كتابي/سيناريو
cartoon	رسم متحرك	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	sculpture	النحت
century	قرن (100 عام)	musician	موسيقي/عازف (شخص)	show	عرض
character	شخصية	newspaper	جريدة/صحيفة	skill	مهارة
clay	طين صلصال	offer (ed)	يعرض	special	ميزي/خاص
colourful	زاهي الألوان	orchestra	أوركسترا	statue	تمثال
concert hall	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	painter	رسام	stone	حجر
cool	رائع	painting	لوحة ملونة	strange	غربي
costumes	ملابس خاصة بمناسبة	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	surprising	مفهش/مفاجئ
cry (yied)	ي بكى/يصرخ	pilot	طيار	theatre	مسرح
deaf	صم	play (ed)	يعرف/مسرديّة	theme park	منتزه/مدينة ترفيهية
describe (d)	يصف	portrait	صورة فنية للوجه	TV programme	برنامج تلفزيوني
die (d)	يموت	pottery	فخار/خرف	wonder (ed)	يتساءل/يتعجب
dinosaur	ديناصور	proud (of)	فخور (بـ)	wood	خشب



## Language

### Ability

**Subject + can + inf.**

**Subject + am/is/are + able to + inf.**

**Subject + know/knows + how to + inf.**

- I **can** **paint** scenery if you want.
- We **are able to** **act** in that play.
- I **know how to** **paint** scenery.

- Sama **can't** **play** chess.
- She **isn't able to** **sew** clothes.
- He **doesn't know how to** **write** an email.



## Speaking

### 1. Expressions of description

- Egypt is **famous** for its ancient art.

### 2. Expressions of giving an opinion

- From my **point of view**, the artists were really good.

### 3. Expressions of preferences

- My **favourite thing** in the museum was a painting called *Al Madina* by Mahmoud Said.

### 4. Expressions of giving a recommendation

- I recommend **looking** at the clothes from other countries.

### 5. Invitation

- Hi Nader. I **was wondering** if you would like to **come** to my cousin's house?

### 6. Offer

- Shall I bring some table tennis balls?

### 7. Requests

- Could you **bring** some food?

### 8. Asking for information

- What time **should** I **come**?

**1**) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) Nawal : Do you know how to play an instrument?

Nada : .....

B) Sarah : .....

Samira : I thought it was great! I recommend watching it.

**2**) Match column A with column B:

<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>
1. The show will be about	a) the problems that they can have.
2. The best thing about the museum	b) where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again.
3. Try to help disabled people by remembering	c) I don't know how to do calligraphy.
4. <i>Jurassic World</i> is about a theme park	d) the play we read in the English class.
5. I'm able to draw and paint, but	e) I thought the action was exciting.
	f) is that it is free to visit.

**Answers:** 1. ( )      2. ( )      3. ( )      4. ( )      5. ( )

**3**) Write a paragraph of about (5) sentences on:

**"A film you have watched"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 3

Based on Unit 9

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What is the name of the film?

- a) Wonder Woman.
- c) Jurassic World.

2 What kind of film is it?

- a) Adventure.
- b) Comic.

3 What escaped from the park?

- a) Birds.
- b) People.

4 Why did the scientists help the dinosaurs?

- a) To die.
- b) To live again.
- c) To escape.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

4

b) Spiderman.

d) Batman.

c) Drama.

d) Historical.

c) Scientists.

d) Dinosaurs.

d) To sleep.

## 2 Complete the following dialogue:

"Salem is inviting Nader to come to his cousin's house."

Salem: Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow?

Nader : Yes, (1) ..... It's a big house, isn't it?

Salem : Yes, he's got table tennis in the garden. (2) ..... like to play?

Nader : Yes, please! Shall I bring some table tennis balls?

Salem : No, he's got those. Could you bring some food? We'll have a picnic.

Nader : Of course, (3) ..... some sandwiches?

Salem : That's a great (4) .....

Nader : What time should I come?

Salem : We're leaving my house (5) .....

Nader : Great! See you then.

5

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Magdy,

How are you these days? I know you are very busy with your work but, please just spend five minutes reading my letter.

Recently, I saw a film called "The Click". It's about a man who was always busy with his work, like you. He was so busy that he didn't have time for his family. He thought that making a lot of money would bring happiness to his home. Until one day, he found a magic remote control. By clicking on it, he could make

6

time pass more quickly. At first, it was a very good thing. He used it all the time. He used it to replace the time he spent with his family to the time he spent on work. However, he didn't know that he could make time go back until he looked in the mirror and saw he was an old man! It was too late. His wife got married to another man, his daughter was a beautiful lady, his son was about to get married and his father died. Finally, the last words he said to his family were "Family's got first".

Please take a rest and go out, have fun with your family. Wish you and your family all the best.

Your cousin,  
**Manal**

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1 What's the main idea of this email?

2 How did Magdy spend his time?

3 What mistake did the man make when he used the remote control?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4 The underlined word "lady" is similar to .....

- a) baby      b) child      c) woman      d) girl

5 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....

- a) family      b) films  
c) work      d) the magic remote control

6 The man realised he was old when he looked in the .....

- a) mirror      b) watch  
c) family      d) remote control

**4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My mother's hobby is to sew ..... for plays.

- a) scripts      b) sceneries      c) costumes      d) instruments

2 Lara always gives her grandmother a big ..... when she sees her.

- a) hug      b) huge      c) hide      d) hall

3 My sister can't walk. She's .....

- a) messy      b) noisy      c) happy      d) disabled

4 My little brother started to ..... after he fell and hurt his hand.

- a) carry      b) cry      c) fry      d) dry

10

- 6 I ..... this film to you. It's really exciting.
- b)
  - c)
  - d)
  - d)********
- 7 The brave firefighter was able to ..... the fire.
- a)
  - b)
  - c)
  - d)********
- 8 I like writing ..... for plays.
- a)
  - b)
  - c)
  - d)********
- 9 If you try hard, you ..... pass your exams.
- a)
  - b)
  - c)
  - d)********
- 10 Can you help me? I ..... never understand this.
- a)
  - b)** can't
  - c)** able to
  - d)** know how**
- 11 I have to go to a business dinner tomorrow night, so I ..... come to the party. I'm very sorry.
- a)** must
  - b)** have to
  - c)** can
  - d)** can't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 This telephone is terrible. I ..... (can) hear you at all.
- 2 Don't shout, I can ..... (hears) you very well.
- 3 Samir ..... (not/able) play the piano.
- 4 Mariam ..... (know) how to use the tablet.

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:  
"A museum you would like to visit again"

## Unit 9



# Research Projects

### 1. A famous person

Do research on "A famous person".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- Information about his/her life and work.
- Why is he/she famous?
- Your opinion about this person.
- If you were instead of this person, what would you do?
- Do you think it's a good thing to be famous?  
Why/ Why not?



### 2. Museums in Egypt

Do research on "Museums in Egypt".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- In which governorate is this museum?
- Describe the museum.
- Recommend something to see or do.
- Give your opinion of the museum.



## Research steps

- 1 ► A suitable title
- 2 ► An introduction
- 3 ► Main Ideas and information
- 4 ► Results
- 5 ► Resources



# ALA WA WA OASIS

Look and write what they are doing.

1



2



3



4



5



6



1

2

3

4

5

6

# Review C

# Units 7, 8 & 9



Tapescript

# Review C

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 91 & 92

Lesson 1



## Reading Text

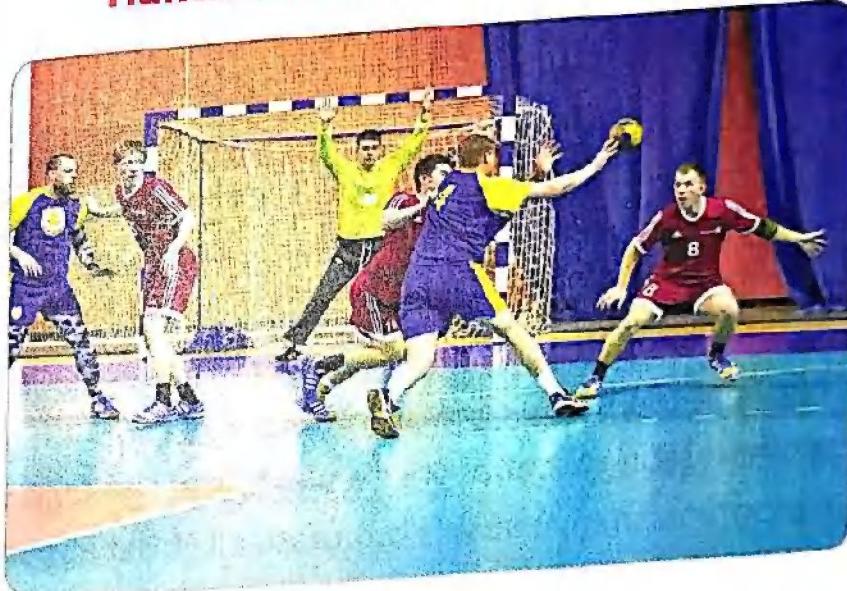
Pre-reading question:

- Are you interested in watching the Handball World Championship?

1. Read the medical advice and complete the sentences with should.

SB page 32

### Medical advice for people at the 2021 Handball World Championship



- Stand 1.5 metres from other people.
- Enter and leave the stadium through the correct doors.
- Take a test for COVID 19 every 72 hours.
- Only players do not need to wear a mask.
- Only online interviews after games.

Post-reading question:

- Why should you stand 1.5 metres from other people?

## Lesson 2



## Listening Text

## Pre-listening question:

- What kinds of food do you like?

**2. Listen to Heba and Sara talking about food. What do they spend too much time doing?**

*SB page 33*

**Heba** : What's your favourite food, Sara?

I like fruit, such as a nice juicy mango!

I like fruit more than anything else

... and the fruit I like best of all ... It's difficult to decide.



**Sara** : I like fruit, too Heba, but my favourite

food is a nice, fresh falafel. There is a food stall near my house where they are very good, and my mum sometimes cooks them, too.

**Heba** : What things do you know how to cook, Sara? I can make omelettes and salads, but I don't know how to make many things.

**Sara** : I know how to make cakes. My grandmother taught me. I love making cakes, but I eat too many of them. I should eat more fruit.

**Heba** : Yes, I eat too many cakes, too! I don't do enough exercise. I have a sports lesson at school once a week, and I go for a walk a few times a month with my cousins but that's all. What about you?

**Sara** : I play tennis twice a week and I run with my father at the weekend, so I do enough exercise, but I often spend too much time playing computer games in the evenings.

**Heba** : Yes, I spend too much time online in the evenings, too. Let's try to do more exercise next week, Sara!

**Sara** : Good idea, Heba!

## Post-listening question:

- How often does Sara play tennis?

## Lesson 2



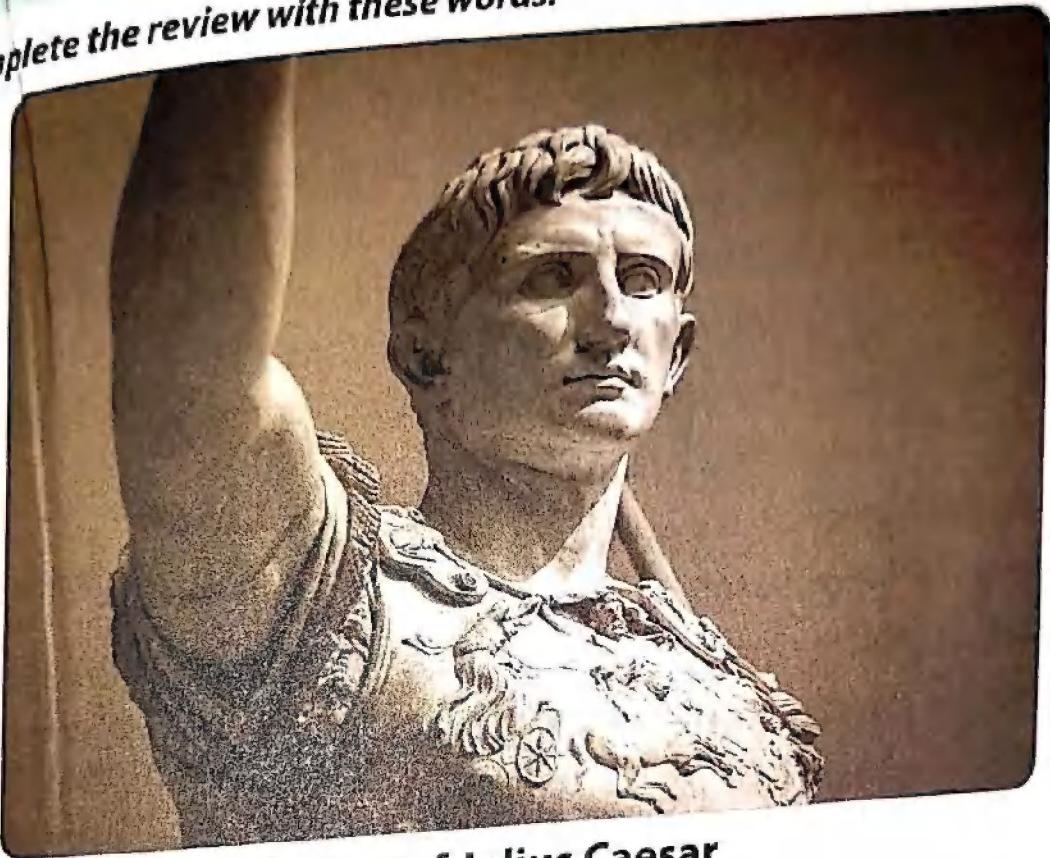
## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:**

- Who is William Shakespeare? Have you read any of his plays?

4. Complete the review with these words.

*SB page 32*



### Review of Julius Caesar

Last night, I went to see Julius Caesar. It's a **play** by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a Roman ruler. Caesar's **acting** made him look very important! The **action** was amazing and it really looked like Ancient Rome.

In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From my point of view, the actor who played Caesar was the best but all the **costume** was very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much **scenery**; it was mostly talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the **script** is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.

**Post-reading question:**

- What did the writer like about the play? What didn't he/she like?

**Pre-listening question:**

- What do you do on your mother's birthday?

**4. Listen to two sisters cooking an omelette. How long should they cook it for?**

WB page 91

**Amal** : It's Mum's birthday. Let's make her some breakfast.



**Dalida** : That's a good idea, Amal. We could make her a fruit salad.

**Amal** : I think she prefers salty food to sweet food, Dalida. What about a cheese omelette?

**Dalida** : Omelette is a good idea. Would you like to get the butter from the fridge, Amal?

**Amal** : OK.

**Dalida** : Shall I beat the eggs? I like doing that. How many eggs should I use?

**Amal** : Thanks, Dalida. If there are four of us, you should use eight eggs.

**Dalida** : Do you know how to chop the cheese, Amal?

**Amal** : Of course.

**Dalida** : It's a good idea to chop the cheese really small. I'll heat some butter in the pan and pour in the eggs.

**Amal** : How long should it cook for?

**Dalida** : We'll leave it for a few minutes.

**Amal** : It looks really nice. I'd like a lot, please!

**Dalida** : We can all have a little. Mum will be very pleased!

**Post-listening question:**

- What do we need to make omelette?

## Lesson 2



## Reading Text

6. Read and complete the reviews with these words:

WB page 92



(1) The people look like they are from Ancient Egypt because the costumes are very good, but the person who painted the **scenery** did not know how to paint!

It was very long, and I didn't like the music. I wouldn't **recommend** this.

(2) The articles are always really interesting to read and they have fantastic **photographs**, too. I really like the **cartoons** because they make me laugh!

If you want to learn about the world today, you should **buy** this!

(3) From my point of **view**, this is the best place to find out about life in the last century. There are interesting **sculptures** of people and some amazing old technology. I loved the big, old **phones**!

(4) The story was very slow and there was very little **action**. I didn't really enjoy it because it **made** me feel sad. The **best** thing about it was learning what it is like to be blind. That must be very difficult.

# Practice

C

Based on Units 7, 8 & 9

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 How many people are there on the bus? نصل الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب 4  
a) No people.      b) Many.      c) A few.      d) A lot.
- 2 How many people are waiting to get on the bus? d) A lot.  
a) No people.      b) Little.      c) A few.      d) A lot.
- 3 How much time does the man running have?  
a) A little.      b) A lot.  
c) Much.      d) Too much.
- 4 How many things is he carrying?  
a) Many.      b) A few.      c) Too few.      d) Nothing.

## 2 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

5

"Ahmed is travelling to England to join a new school."

Mother : Ahmed, your plane will arrive in England at 11 o'clock.

Ahmed : (1) ..... meet me at the airport if the plane's late?

Mother : Uncle Sami will wait for you, don't worry!

Ahmed : What clothes will I wear (2) ..... cold?

Mother : You have a big coat, but it (3) ..... warm inside!

Ahmed : Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school?

Mother : There (4) ..... be lots of new students, they'll be very friendly.

Ahmed : What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson?

Mother : He or she will help you to understand.

Ahmed : (5) ..... mum. I'll miss you so much.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

6

Last night, I went to see *Julius Caesar*. It's a play by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a Roman ruler. Caesar's acting made him look very important! The action was amazing and it really looked like Ancient Rome. In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From

my point of view, the actor who played Caesar was the best but all the costumes were very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much scenery; it was mostly talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the script is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1 Where do you think this passage is from?

2 How is the language of the script?

3 Who wrote this play?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4 The underlined word "ruler" means the most ..... person in the country.

a) important      b) difficult

c) frightening

d) ancient

5 There weren't much ..... in the play.

a) action      b) costume

c) talk

d) scenery

6 I was ..... at the end of the play.

a) sad      b) pleased

c) happy

d) excited

**4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 If you want to be a/an ..... , you should practise music every day.

a) actor

b) musician

c) waiter

d) writer

2 Dalida will ..... four eggs for the omelette.

a) stir

b) beat

c) boil

d) pour

3 A ..... is a period of a hundred years.

a) century

b) country

c) scenery

d) centre

4 If you are able to ..... scenery, you should help with the end-of-year show.

a) paint

b) write

c) act

d) do

5 We ..... things with our mouth to know whether they are bad or good.

a) taste

b) smell

c) touch

d) hear

10

- 6 Planes, mobile phones and rockets are great .....  
 a) views      b) delivery      c) inventions      d) pollution
- 7 If you are really ..... , you shouldn't have any more chicken.  
 a) hungry      b) free      c) full      d) empty
- 8 He ..... you when he's on the bus.  
 a) texts      b) will text      c) texted      d) text
- 9 You need to ..... play an instrument or sing.  
 a) can      b) able to      c) know how to      d) know
- 10 If you meet other people, you ..... stand 1.5 metres from them.  
 a) should      b) won't      c) have      d) able to

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 ..... (you/like) a few olives?
- 2 If you know how to cook, you ..... (be) careful when you eat cakes or biscuits.
- 3 Are there any new ..... (student) this year?
- 4 ..... (not/talk) during the lesson.

**6** Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

WB

"A review of something you did not enjoy"



## Unit 10

## We are what we wear

### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** : An article about Egyptian clothes now and in the past; a blog about what teenagers wear; a text about linen and cotton; an advert

**Writing** : An advert to sell something

**Listening** : People talking about their clothes; a conversation in a clothes shop

**Speaking** : Discussing and describing clothes; shopping for clothes

**Language** : Adjective order; one, ones

**Life Skills** : Respect for diversity



Tapescript



# Lessons 1&2

SB pages 34-37 WB pages 93 & 94

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

#### Lesson 1

hot climate

مناخ حار

material

قماش/مادة خام

relaxed

مسترخ/مستريح

### Items of clothing

### قطع الملابس

head / face / رأس وجه	legs ساق	feet أقدام	body جسد	neck رقبة
earrings حلقة قرط	trousers بنطلون	boots حذاء برقبة	belt حزام	necklace قلادة/عقد
headscarf حجاب	shorts شورت	sandals صندل/خف	handbag حقيبة يد	tie رابطة عنق
scarf وشاح/طربة		trainers حذاء رياضي	jumper بلوفر	
sunglasses نظارة شمسية		shoes حذاء	galabeya جلباب	

### Adjectives for clothes

### صفات خاصة بالملابس

beautiful جميل	comfortable مريح	strange غريب
casual ملابس غير رسمية/كاجوال	pretty جميل	striped مقلم/مخطط
colourful زاهي الألوان	smart أنيق	traditional تقليدي
<b>Lesson 2</b>		
dress (ed) يلبس/يرتدى	loose واسع/فضفاض	simple بسيط
jewellery مجوهرات	sheet ملایة	wooden خشبي

### Materials

### مواد خام

cotton القطن	leather الجلد	plastic البلاستيك
glass الزجاج	linen الكتان	wood الخشب
gold الذهب	metal المعدن	wool الصوف

## Additional Vocabulary

## المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1	clothes	ملابس (ملابس يرتديها شخص)	item	بند/عنصر
	clothing	الملابس (الملابس بشكل عام)	look like	يبدو/يشبه
	flat	شقة	probably	ربما/من المحتمل
Lesson 2	although	بالرغم من	parents	الوالدان
	American	أمريكي	popular	شائع/شعبي/محبوب
	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	present	هدية
	Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	similar	مشابه/مغاثل
	blog	مدونة إلكترونية	special	خاص/مميز
	boat	قارب	style	أسلوب
	decide (d)	يقرر	tourist	سائح
	electric	كهربائي	type	نوع

## Colours

## الألوان

black	أسود	green	أخضر	purple	بنفسجي
blue	أزرق	orange	برتقالي	red	أحمر
brown	بني	pink	بمبني	white	أبيض

## Language Expressions

## التعابيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1	keep ▶ warm/cool	يبقى دافئاً/يحافظ على بروادة	wear ▶ clothes	يرتدي ملابس
Lesson 2	dress ▶ differently	يرتدي بشكل مختلف	the same ... as	نفس الشيء ... مثل
	most of the time	معظم الوقت		

# UNIT 10

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

### Lesson 1

best for

الأفضل لـ

know about

يعرف عن

dress in

يرتدى

protect from

يحمى من

### Lesson 2

different from

مختلف عن

in the summer

في الصيف

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

### Lesson 1

comfortable

مريح

uncomfortable

غير مريح

good for

مفيدة لـ

bad for

ضار لـ

### Lesson 2

rich

غنى

poor

فقير

expensive

غالي

cheap

رخيص

outside

خارج

inside

داخل

short

قصير

long

طويل

## Conjugations of Irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

### Present

### Past simple

### Past participle

### Lesson 1

buy

يشتري

bought

bought

grow

يزرع/ينمو

grew

grown

know

يعرف

knew

known

say

يقول

said

said

wear

يرتدى/يلبس

wore

worn

### Lesson 2

cost

يكلف

cost

cost

## Language Notes

climate

weather

• What type of material is best for a hot **climate**?• You should wear heavy clothes. The **weather** **these days** is very cold.

المناخ بوجه عام (أى على مدار السنة أو الفصل كله)

الطقس (الفترة محددة من الوقت فى فصل معين)

skin

leather

• My son has a cut in his **skin**.

جلد (الكائن الحى)

الجلد (بعد تصنيع الأشياء)

• This bag is made of good **leather**.

is/are + made of

يصنع من (والمادة الخام ما زالت موجودة لم تغير حالتها)

is/are + made from

يصنع من (والمادة الخام تغيرت وغير موجودة فى حالتها الأولى) أو يصنع من شيء آخر

• This chair is **made of** wood.• Glass is **made from** sand.• These sandals are **made from** an old tyre.

look + adj

يبدو

• Her clothes **look** comfortable.

## Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This cake is made ..... milk and flour.

a) from

b) of

c) into

d) by

2 My shoes are made of the best .....

a) skin

b) leather

c) wood

d) wool

3 Egypt has a hot ..... in summer and cold in winter.

a) weather

b) whether

c) climate

d) air

## Write it right



### How to write about different colours and styles of clothes

كيفية الكتابة عن الوان وانماط الملابس

- There are different kinds of clothes with different colours and styles.
- Some people like light colours and others like dark colours.
- My (نوع الملابس المفضل) like/likes wearing (فرد/أفراد من العائلة).
- My (فرد/أفراد من العائلة) don't like/doesn't like wearing (نوع الملابس).
- I like to wear (نوع الملابس المفضل).
- They should be (وصف الملابس).

### Writing tips

Avoid repeating the essential words and phrases because it means you don't have fully thought about the topic. You can use a dictionary.

تجنب تكرار الكلمات والتعبيرات لأن  
هذا يعني أنك لست ملماً بالموضوع  
الذي تكتب عنه، يمكنك استخدام  
القاموس سيساعدك كثيراً.

### Example

#### Describing the clothes my family wear

There are different kinds of clothes with different colours and styles. Everyone has their own style. Some people like light colours and others like dark colours. My grandparents like wearing traditional clothes with dark colours. They wear loose clothes. My father likes to wear a shirt with a beautiful tie. He is very smart. My mother doesn't like short clothes at all. She always wears a headscarf. My brother, sister and I like to wear casual clothes. They should be modern. I like to wear T-shirts on jeans. They should be colorful and smart.

### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of (90) words on "Your favourite styles of clothes":

#### "My favourite styles of clothes"

Lesson 1



## Listening Text

## Pre-listening question:

What types of clothes do you prefer?

2. Listen to four people talking about their clothes. Match the people with the photos on page 34.

SB pages 35

## 1. Narrator: Huda

I'm Huda. These are the types of clothes I usually wear. I like to be comfortable and feel relaxed<sup>(1)</sup> in my clothes. These sunglasses were a present from my mum and I love them. I think I wear them outside most days!



- |                  |
|------------------|
| مسترخ (1)        |
| تقليدي (2)       |
| زاهي الألوان (3) |
| حجاب (4)         |
| انيق (5)         |

## 2. Narrator: Tarek

I'm Tarek and I wear these clothes when I'm helping my father. It's really hot outside today and these traditional<sup>(2)</sup> clothes keep me cool and protect me from the sun when I'm working.



## 3. Narrator: Sara

I'm Sara and I'm wearing my favourite colour today! I think I dress in a traditional style but I like to be colourful<sup>(3)</sup>. My headscarf<sup>(4)</sup> is from the market. It's a cool colour, isn't it?



## 4. Narrator: Adam

My name's Adam and I'm going for a special meal with my grandparents, which is why I'm wearing these clothes. I usually wear jeans. I quite like looking smart<sup>(5)</sup>, but I think I look a bit like my father when he is going to work!



## Post-listening question:

Why does Tarek wear his traditional clothes?

**Pre-reading question:**

- What do you think the clothes and jewellery in Ancient Egypt are made of?

**2. Read about clothes in Ancient Egypt. What did the people love to wear? SB page 36**

**Clothes in Ancient Egypt**

واسع/فضفاض (1)
كتان (2)
حزام (3)
جلد (4)
معدن (5)
مجوهرات (6)

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes.

They both wore **loose**<sup>(1)</sup>, white, **linen**<sup>(2)</sup> clothes with a **belt**<sup>(3)</sup>. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive **leather**<sup>(4)</sup> sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, **metal**<sup>(5)</sup> **jewellery**<sup>(6)</sup>. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

**Post-reading questions:**

1. How are the clothes we wear today different from those in Ancient Egypt?
2. Do you think Ancient Egyptian clothes look nice? Why/Why not?

**Life Skills**

1. Do you think what people wear is important? Why?
2. How do you decide what to wear? Do you listen to the opinions of your friends and family about clothes?
3. What things can you know about someone from his or her clothes? What can't you know?



## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My father wants to have a holiday to feel ..... .  
 a) relaxed      b) tired      c) ill      d) sad
- 2 Girls like to wear ..... on their ears.  
 a) watches      b) necklaces      c) earrings      d) rings
- 3 I don't like wearing a ..... around my trousers.  
 a) tie      b) galabeya      c) scarf      d) belt
- 4 Habiba and Basma like to wear ..... round their necks.  
 a) necklaces      b) earrings      c) sandals      d) shoes
- 5 My brother looks ..... when he wears the black jacket. He's great.  
 a) messy      b) smart      c) ugly      d) relaxed
- 6 Women like to wear expensive ..... to look pretty. It's made of gold.  
 a) glass      b) jewellery      c) headscarf      d) dress
- 7 This necklace is expensive. It ..... my father a lot of money.  
 a) paid      b) lent      c) borrowed      d) cost
- 8 I like to play football in my ..... They help me run fast.  
 a) sandals      b) trainers      c) boots      d) shoes
- 9 We wear heavy clothes to ..... warm.  
 a) take      b) save      c) protect      d) keep
- 10 The best clothes are made of ..... .  
 a) cotton      b) metal      c) linen      d) hay
- 11 Young men prefer to wear ..... clothes.  
 a) traditional      b) casual      c) ancient      d) old
- 12 Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes, but they wore leather ..... .  
 a) jeans      b) trainers      c) boots      d) sandals
- 13 Children usually wear ..... clothes. They're bright.  
 a) black      b) colourful      c) heavy      d) traditional
- 14 I like to wear these shoes when I walk a lot. They are very ..... .  
 a) bad      b) tiring      c) comfortable      d) tight
- 15 My sister wears like my mother. She doesn't dress ..... from her.  
 a) alike      b) differently      c) the same      d) similar

## Adjective order

ترتيب الصفات

- Use more than one adjective in this order. Do not use more than three or four adjectives.

استخدم أكثر من صفة في هذا الترتيب. لا تستخدم أكثر من ثلاثة أو أربع صفات.

Description الوصف	Size حجم	Shape الشكل	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Material المادة	Noun الشيء
pretty	big	long	old	green	cotton	dress
nice	small	short	new	pink	gold	clothes
beautiful	large		young	white	linen	galabeya
colourful			ancient	blue	leather	necklace
strange				black	plastic	
				purple	wool	
				brown	wooden	
				orange		

- Women like to wear beautiful, gold necklaces.
- She likes loose, white, linen clothes.
- He wore a long, green, cotton galabeya.
- It's a beautiful brown and orange necklace.
- It's a beautiful, blue skirt.
- Mr and Mrs Osman live in a big, old, traditional flat in Aswan.



## Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 She gave him a/an ..... vase.  
 a) small, Egyptian, black  
 c) small, black, Egyptian
  - 2 This is a/an ..... movie.  
 a) new, Italian, wonderful  
 c) wonderful, new, Italian
  - 3 It is in the ..... container.  
 a) large, blue, metal  
 c) blue, metal, large
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>b)</b> black, Egyptian, small<br><b>d)</b> Egyptian, small, black | <b>b)</b> wonderful, Italian, new<br><b>d)</b> Italian, new, wonderful |
| <b>b)</b> blue, large, metal<br><b>d)</b> large, metal, blue         |  |

## Language Exercises

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 My uncle bought ..... car.  
 a) black, new      b) a black, new      c) a new, black      d) new, black
- 2 She lost a .....  
 a) small, white cat      b) cat, small, white  
 c) white, small cat      d) small, cat, white
- 3 Pass me the ..... cups.  
 a) plastic, big, blue      b) big, blue, plastic  
 c) big, plastic, blue      d) a big, plastic, blue
- 4 He sat behind ..... desk.  
 a) big, wooden, brown      b) a big, brown, wooden  
 c) wooden, big, brown      d) big, brown, wooden
- 5 She was wearing ..... shoes.  
 a) black, small      b) leather, new  
 c) old, nice      d) beautiful, red
- 6 They live in a ..... house.  
 a) wooden, wonderful      b) wooden, wonderful, old  
 c) wonderful, old, wooden      d) old, wonderful, wooden
- 7 Amira has ..... eyes.  
 a) beautiful, brown      b) brown, beautiful  
 c) blue, small      d) black, beautiful
- 8 He bought ..... new trousers.  
 a) linen      b) smart      c) leather      d) black
- 9 I sleep on a ..... bed.  
 a) comfortable, new      b) wooden, new  
 c) brown, new      d) new, big
- 10 My mother cooked ..... dinner.  
 a) big, nice      b) a big, nice      c) nice, big      d) a nice, big

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1 We wanted ..... (metal / a / grey) table.
- 2 She went home and sat on her ..... (wooden / old / comfortable) bed.
- 3 She bought a ..... (plastic / red / new) cup.
- 4 I want an ..... (green / amazing / cotton) dress.
- 5 She has a beautiful ..... (gold / old) ring.
- 6 My parents live in a ..... (new / nice) house.

# Lessons 1&2

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

"Amal and Nawal are talking about shopping".

5

Amal : What did you do today?

Nawal : (1) ..... shopping.

Amal : Did you buy anything?

Nawal : (2) ..... , I bought a few things.

Amal : (3) ..... ?

Nawal : I bought this coat. (4) ..... ?

Amal : Yes, I like it a lot. It's very pretty. Where did you buy it?

Nawal : At the mall on 5th street.

Amal : Was it expensive?

Nawal : (5) ..... . It was on sale for 200 pounds.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1 Cotton is best ..... cold climate.

- a) to      b) in      c) on      d) for

2 ..... is an expensive material.

- a) Linen      b) Plastic      c) Wood      d) Gold

3 ..... people like to wear expensive jewellery.

- a) Rich      b) Poor      c) Simple      d) Old

4 My sandals are different ..... yours. They're bigger.

- a) from      b) at      c) of      d) for

5 In some countries, men wear skirts. They look .....

- a) strange      b) strong      c) striped      d) old

6 She always covers her head with a .....

- a) belt      b) headscarf      c) boot      d) tie

7 We should use ..... cars as they don't pollute the environment.

- a) electric      b) oil      c) petrol      d) electricity

My watch is in the ..... box.

- b)** blue, large, metal
- c)** metal, large, blue

- b)** large, blue, metal
- d)** wooden, old

Where's my new ..... cotton sweater?

- a)** long
- b)** striped
- c)** big

- d)** blue

Do you like my ..... new shoes?

- a)** expensive
- b)** blue
- c)** leather

- d)** short

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 There are two ..... (red / beautiful) dresses in her closet.

4

2 She bought a pair of ..... (old / dirty) socks.

3 My wife's ..... (dark / blue / beautiful) eyes.

4 My favourite ..... (cotton / old / black) shirt was made in China.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Styles of clothes that you don't like"

6

25

### Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	

(1-15) (16-24) (25-30) (1-12) (13-20) (21-25) (1-25) (26-45) (46-55)

181

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38-40 WB pages 95 & 96



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3				
borrow (ed)	يستعير	own (ed)	يملك	special occasion مناسبة خاصة
clothes shop	محل ملابس	school day	يوم دراسي	sports clothes ملابس رياضية
family member	فرد من العائلة	school uniform	زي مدرسي موحد	teenager مراهق
occasion	المناسبة	size	مقاس/حجم	wedding حفل زفاف
Lesson 4				
bamboo	الخيزران	industry	صناعة	pick (ed) بقطف
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	luxury	فخمة/ترفة	quality جودة
crops	محاصيل	material	قماش/مادة خام	soft طري/لين/ناعم
government	الحكومة	perfect (for)	ممتاز/مثالى/جيد لـ	soil تربة زراعية

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3				
a little shop	محل صغير	environment	البيئة	shop (ped) بسوق
change (d)	يغير	gloves	قفازات	someone else شخص آخر
dress	فستان	hobby	هواية	T-shirt تيشيرت
Lesson 4				
almost	تقريباً	farmer	فلاح/مزارع	nature الطبيعة
amount	كمية	factory	مصنع	possible ممكن
business	عمل	greener future	مستقبل أكثر نظافة	protect (ed) بغض
China	الصين	however	ومع ذلك	reason سبب
climate	مناخ	modern	حديث/عصري	scientist عالم

## Language Expressions

## العبارات اللغوية

Lesson 3	sport	يمارس رياضة	get	► the clothes	يحصل على الملابس
do	your own clothes	تصنف ملابسك الخاصة	take	► a photo	يلقط صورة فوتوغرافية
make					
Lesson 4	soft	يبقى طرئاً	do	► a job	يؤدي وظيفة
keep					
make	money	يكسب مالاً	as a result		كنتيجة لذلك

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

Lesson 3	amazing at	مذهل في	in the market	في السوق
	a pair of	زوج من	on a special occasion	في مناسبة خاصة
	care about	يهتم بـ	over there	هناك
Lesson 4	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	famous for	مشهور بـ
	by hand	يدويًا/باستخدام اليد	important to/for	هام لـ
	by the Nile	بجوار النيل	instead of	بدلاً من

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعکسها

Lesson 3	borrow	يستعير	lend	يسلف	far	بعيد	near	قريب
Lesson 4	soft	لين/طري	hard	صلب	large	ضخم	small	صغير
	buy	يشتري	sell	يبيع	perfect	مثالي/ممتاز	imperfect	غير مثالي

UNIT 10

## **Conjugations of Irregular verbs**

## تعريف الأفعال غير الملتزمة

Conjugations of irregular verbs		Present	Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 4				
break off	يقطف / يزيل	broke off		broken off
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept		kept
grow	يزرع / ينموا	grew		grown
sell	يباع	sold		sold

## Definitions

التعريفات

Lesson 4	Definitions
chemicals	مواد كيميائية
crops	محاصيل
industry	صناعة
luxury	فخّم / ترف
perfect	مثالي / ممتاز
pick	يقطف
soft	طري / ناعم
environment	البيئة

## Language Notes

## 1 much + comparative

مقارنة بين اثنين

- My brother is **much taller** than me.

### used to + inf.

**سادٌ أَنْ (فَعَلَ شَيْءٍ فِي الْمَاضِ)**

- I used to **play** in the street, but now I don't.

### 3 What about + (n./v.ing)?

لذا عذراً

- What about the big, plastic boots? • What about going to the mall?



## Check Point

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 My grandfather used ..... to a remote school when he was young.  
a) go                      b) to go                      c) going                      d) to going

2 Basmala is ..... more beautiful than any other girl.  
a) many                      b) few                      c) a lot of                      d) much

## Write it right

### How to write about Egyptian linen and cotton

كيفية الكتابة عن القطن والكتان المصري

- Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material.
- The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen.
- They used it to make clothes.
- Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because it is very good.
- The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton.
- It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes.
- They still use water from the Nile for the crops.

#### Example

#### Egyptian linen and cotton

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. They used it to make clothes. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because it is very good. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. There are a lot of people working in the cotton industry. They still use water from the Nile for the crops. Cotton uses a lot of water and chemicals to grow. However, the government is trying to help farmers to protect the environment and use less water.

#### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: "The most perfect materials for making clothes".

#### The most perfect materials for making clothes

#### Writing tips

Edit carefully. Shorten, delete, and rewrite anything that does not add to the meaning.

قم بتعديل التعديلات ومحذفه، احذف وادرج كل شيء لا ينتمي إلى المعنى.

**Pre-reading questions:**

1. How do you choose what you wear?
2. Do you care more about how you look or being comfortable?

**2. Read the blog. Where did the three people get the clothes they talk about? SB page 33**

**What do you wear?**

This week, we asked three Egyptian teenagers<sup>(1)</sup> what they wear and why! Use the dictionary to find the meaning of difficult words.



**Noha** : I bought this shirt from a shop in Cairo, but I'm trying to buy fewer clothes.

Clothes factories cause a lot of pollution, so they are bad for the environment<sup>(2)</sup>. So sometimes I borrow my sister's clothes. She borrows<sup>(3)</sup> mine, too, because we are the same size.

**Ayman** : These trainers were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them. I like doing sport and these trainers are much better than the ones I used to wear. I usually wear sports clothes<sup>(4)</sup> because they are comfortable.



مراهقون (1)

البيئة (2)

يستعير (3)

ملابس رياضية (4)

نى مدريسى موحد (5)

حفل زفاف (6)

متناسبات خاصة (7)

**Dalida** : This is my school uniform<sup>(5)</sup>. I have to wear it every school day. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me for my cousin's wedding<sup>(6)</sup>. She's amazing at sewing. She always makes us clothes for special occasions<sup>(7)</sup>.

**Post-reading questions:**

1. Why does Ayman usually wear sports clothes?
2. What is Dalida's grandmother good at?

## Lesson 4



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:**  
- In your opinion, what industries are important to Egypt?

1. Read the article. Did the Ancient Egyptians make the same types of material<sup>(1)</sup> as now?  
5B page 40

### Egyptian linen and cotton



- |                   |
|-------------------|
| مادة خام (1)      |
| محاصيل (2)        |
| فخمة / ترف (3)    |
| صناعة (4)         |
| تربية زراعية (5)  |
| بكتاف (6)         |
| مواد كيميائية (7) |
| يخص (8)           |

- (1) Egypt is famous for growing crops<sup>(2)</sup> to make material.  
The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets.
- (2) Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury<sup>(3)</sup> clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry<sup>(4)</sup>, from farmers to people making or selling clothes and material.
- (3) The climate and soil<sup>(5)</sup> in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked<sup>(6)</sup> by hand to keep it soft.
- (4) When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals<sup>(7)</sup>. Now, the government is trying to help farmers to protect<sup>(8)</sup> the environment and use less water.

**Post-reading question:**

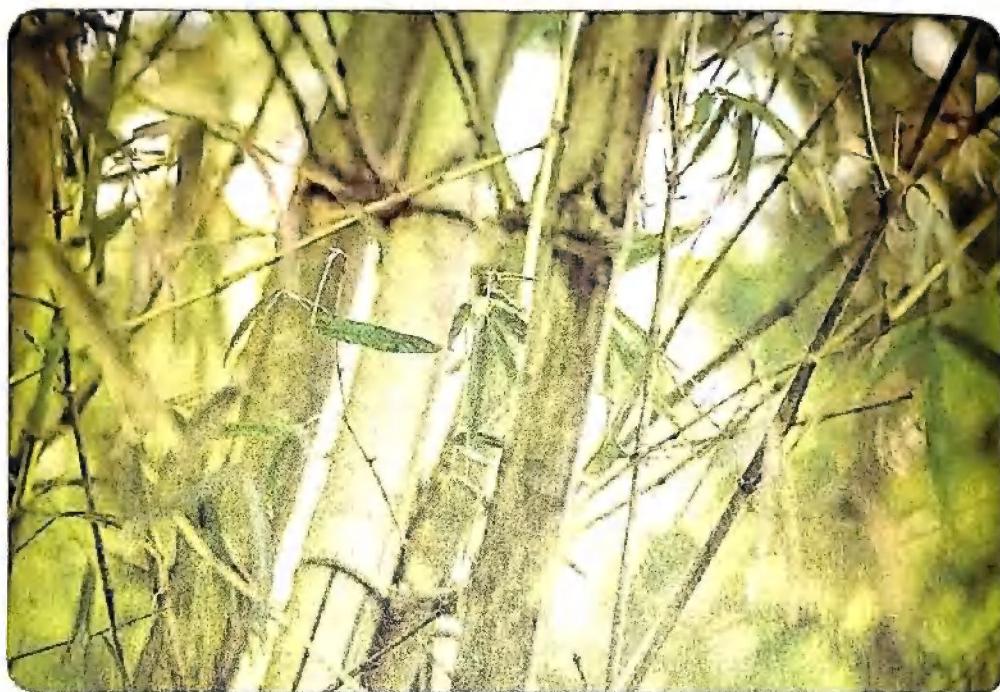
- How can the farmers protect the environment?

**Pre-reading question:**

- Would you like to buy clothes made from bamboo? Why/ Why not?

**2. Complete the article with these words.**

WB page 96

**Is bamboo<sup>(1)</sup> the new cotton?**

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo instead of cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect<sup>(2)</sup> plant. After the bamboo is picked, people often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. These are bad for nature<sup>(3)</sup>. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very soft. As a result, it is not used for expensive, luxury clothes which are usually made from cotton.

الخيزران (1)

مثالي/معمتاز (2)

الطبيعة (3)

**Post-reading questions:**

1. Why is bamboo an important crop for China?
2. Why is bamboo not a perfect plant?

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Tonight is a very special ..... . We will give a party for my birthday.  
 a) festival      b) accident      c) holiday      d) occasion
- 2 Adel is 19. He's a/an ..... .  
 a) baby      b) teenager      c) toddler      d) infant
- 3 My sister and I wear the same ..... . We share our clothes together.  
 a) size      b) weight      c) length      d) height
- 4 Do you have a pen that I can ..... ?  
 a) own      b) lend      c) borrow      d) owe
- 5 She looked smart and amazing in her ..... dress.  
 a) uniform      b) wedding      c) costumes      d) clothing
- 6 Almost every family in the country ..... a computer or a tablet.  
 a) collects      b) stores      c) saves      d) owns
- 7 They live in ..... in a very big villa. They are very rich.  
 a) sad      b) luxury      c) nervous      d) messy
- 8 In China, the bamboo ..... makes a lot of money.  
 a) recycling      b) fishing      c) industry      d) eating
- 9 Another way to ..... money online is by selling new products.  
 a) borrow      b) win      c) do      d) make
- 10 The Ancient Egyptians grew plants ..... the Nile to make linen.  
 a) by      b) to      c) on      d) at
- 11 Noha speaks English and French very well. She's ..... at languages.  
 a) messy      b) bad      c) perfect      d) noisy
- 12 The farm with good soil gives its owner high quality ..... .  
 a) rocks      b) crops      c) stones      d) bones
- 13 Older brothers should care ..... their younger ones.  
 a) about      b) to      c) of      d) in
- 14 These bad ..... make the plants die.  
 a) gloves      b) chemicals      c) businesses      d) crops
- 15 What jobs do you ..... at home?  
 a) do      b) bring      c) make      d) take

## 1

## Demonstratives

أسماء الإشارة

## this / that / these / those

(هذا - هذه) اسم إشارة للمفرد القريب. (this)

- I like **this phone** a lot.
- This** is the best **concert** I went to.

(ذلك - تلك) اسم إشارة للمفرد البعيد. (that)

- That café** looks good.
- That** was a great **concert**.
- Do you like **these shoes**?
- These** two **people** are my neighbours, Said and Sayed.
- Those** are my **keys**.
- Those** were the best **days** of my life.

(هؤلاء) اسم إشارة للجمع القريب. (These)

(أولئك) اسم إشارة للجمع البعيد. (those)

## 2

## one/ones

**Use one (singular) or ones (plural) to replace nouns in a sentence.**

نستخدم (one) (مع المفرد) أو (ones) (مع الجمع) لاستبدال الأسماء في الجملة.

فع (one, ones) كالتالي:

(1) بعد الصفة:

- See those two girls? Hend is the tall **one** and Huda is the short **one**.
- Which is your car, the red **one** or the blue **one**?
- My trousers are old. I need some new **ones**.
- See those two girls? Helen is the **one** on the left.
- Let's look at the photographs – the **ones** you took in Paris.
- You can borrow a book. Which **one** do you want?
- Which **ones** are yours?
- This cookie looks nice, but that **one** looks delicious.

(2) بعد (the):

(3) بعد (which):

(4) بعد (this - these - that - those):

## Language Exercises

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 I'll have a piece of cake. Would you like to have ..... too?  
 a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'
- 2 Let's watch a different film. This ..... is so boring.  
 a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'
- 3 New cars need less petrol than old .....  
 a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'
- 4 We have three children. The oldest ..... is 15 years old.  
 a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'
- 5 Look at these trousers. Which ..... do you like better?  
 a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'
- 6 Look, there is Martin. He's the ..... on the left.  
 a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'
- 7 A: Have you seen my new glasses?  
 B: You mean the ..... you bought last week?  
 a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'
- 8 Look at ..... newspaper here.  
 a) this      b) that      c) these      d) those
- 9 ..... building over there is my school.  
 a) This      b) That      c) These      d) Those
- 10 ..... questions are difficult. Can you help me?  
 a) This      b) That      c) These      d) There
- 11 Look at ..... magazine here. It's great.  
 a) this      b) there      c) these      d) those
- 12 ..... was a great evening.  
 a) This      b) That      c) These      d) Those

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- 1 Are these your shoes, Sandy? The brown ..... (one) under the desk?
- 2 ..... (that) people we met last night were really nice.
- 3 ..... (these) bottle over there is empty.
- 4 A: ..... (these) is my brother, Jack. B: Nice to meet you, Jack.
- 5 A: Are these your books? B: No, mine are the ..... (one) on the table.
- 6 I've lost my wallet. I need to buy a new ..... (one's).

## Speaking

## Talking about clothes

## Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

## التحدث عن الملابس

## Response

جملة الرد

**Hana:** How many pairs of shoes do you have? Which ones are your favourite?  
كم عدد الأحذية لديك؟ أيهم تفضل؟

**Karim:** I have about four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite.  
أمتلك حوالي ٤ أحذية، ولكن حذائي الرياضي هو المفضل لدي.

**Hana:** Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?  
أى محلات الملابس تحب؟ أيهم الأفضل لديك؟

**Karim:** I love casual clothing shops, but my favourite is sport clothing shops.  
أحب متاجر الملابس الكاجوال، ولكن متاجر الملابس الرياضية هي المفضلة لدى.

Type a message

## Speaking Exercise

**Complete the following dialogue:****"Hana and Karim are talking about clothes."****Hana :** Hello, Karim. Can I ask you some questions?**Karim :** Yes, of course. What would you like to ask?**Hana :** How many pairs of shoes do you have?**Karim :** (1)..... are your favourite?**Hana :** (2)..... are your favourite?**Karim :** (3).....**Hana :** Which clothes shop (4).....?**Karim :** My favourite clothes shops are suit clothing shops.**Hana :** What about the bags?**Karim :** I have (5).....

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

4

1 Where did Ancient Egyptians grow plants?

- a) By the road.
- b) By the sea.
- c) By the Nile.
- d) By their houses.

2 What were their clothes made of?

- a) Linen.
- b) Plastic.
- c) Gold.
- d) Metal.

3 What crop is famous all over the world?

- a) Plastic.
- b) Linen.
- c) Wool.
- d) Cotton.

4 A: Why is it famous? B: Because it's .....

- a) good
- b) bad
- c) long
- d) soft

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

10

1 Cotton should be picked ..... hand to keep it soft.

- a) by
- b) to
- c) of
- d) on

2 He studied hard, as a ..... he got high marks.

- a) result
- b) reason
- c) cause
- d) crop

3 The ..... is trying to help everyone in the country.

- a) experiment
- b) development
- c) government
- d) environment

4 My shirt is made of a good .....

- a) metal
- b) material
- c) wood
- d) gold

5 Farmers should care about their plants to ..... well.

- a) save
- b) push
- c) climb
- d) grow

6 All students should wear their ..... when they go to school.

- a) costumes
- b) uniforms
- c) gloves
- d) earrings

7 Farmers should ..... their plants after they grow well.

- a) die
- b) kill
- c) climb
- d) pick up

8 Pass me ..... pencils. They are on the desk.

- a) this
- b) these
- c) that
- d) those

193

# UNIT 10

- 9 I don't like these trousers. Can you show me smaller ..... ?  
 a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'
- 10 This isn't my dictionary. I have got a bigger ..... .  
 a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to tell your best friend, Omar about your favourite clothes. Your name is Sameer and your email address is sameer@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is omar@gmail.com.

24

## Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	24	54	
(1-15) (16-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-24)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-54)	

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41-43 WB pages 97-99



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

lesson 5 changing room	غرفة تغيير الملابس	fit (ted)	يتناسب/يلائم	shopkeeper	صاحب المتجر
customer	زبون	perfectly	بشكل ممتاز/ تماماً	tool	اداة
lesson 6 advert	اعلان	fantastic	رائع	price	ثمن/سعر
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	handbag	حقيبة يد	useful	مفيدة
discuss (ed)	يناقش	interested	مهتم		

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

lesson 5 a bit	قليلًا	check (ed)	يتتحقق من/يتتأكد	jacket	جاكيت
birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد	cotton industry	صناعة القطن	sale	بيع/تخفيض
lesson 6 already	بالفعل	email (ed)	يرسل بريد إلكتروني	object	شيء
				statue	تمثال

### Language Expressions

### التعابيرات اللغوية

lesson 5 get married	Lesson 6 move house	ينتقل إلى مسكن جديد
-------------------------	------------------------	---------------------

### Prepositions

### حروف الجر

lesson 5 buy for	يُشتري لـ/من أجلـ	look for	يبحث عن	try on	يقيس	What type of?
lesson 6 around your neck	حول رقبتك	for sale	للبيع	keep things in	يحفظ الأشياء بداخلـ	
at the top	في القمة	present for	هدية لـ			

## Write it right

### How to write about an advert

كيف تكتب عن اعلان

- I'm selling (ذكر الشيء مع بعض الصفات)
- It is/They are (اذكر ما يميز هذا الشيء)
- It is/They are made in (بلد المنشأ)
- It is/They are made of (المادة التي صنع منها)
- It was/They were a present for my birthday.
- I like it/ them very much but I already have one/ones that is/are the same!
- The price is perfect. It is .. (ذكر السعر)
- If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.

### Writing tips

Follow these steps while writing a paragraph:

- Plan your paragraph.
  - Write it.
  - Review your paragraph.
- بعض الخطوات عند كتابة الفقرة:  
• تخطيط لفقرتك.  
• كتابة.  
• مراجعة.

مراجعة بعد الكتابة.

### Example

#### An advert for trainers

My name's Omar. I'm 15 years old. I'm selling beautiful, new, white trainers. They are very luxury and comfortable with high quality. They are made in the USA. They are made of rubber. Their size is 41. They were a present for my birthday. I like them very much but I already have ones that are the same! I always wear them while I am doing sports. They are perfect for work, school or sports. Their price is perfect. They are 500 hundred pounds. The buyer can take back his money if he doesn't like them. If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.

### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on "An advert for a leather jacket".

#### "An advert for a leather jacket"

## Lesson 5



## Listening Text

2. Listen to a conversation in a shop and answer these questions. SB page 41

**Eman** : Hello, can I help you?

**Shopkeeper** : Hi, yes, I'm looking for a dress for a **special occasion<sup>(1)</sup>**. It's my brother's birthday party next week.

**Shopkeeper** : Oh nice. What type of dress would you like?

**Eman** : I'd like something like this one .... but do you have a different colour? I don't like yellow.

**Shopkeeper** : We have this one in blue.

**Eman** : That's beautiful! Could I try it on?

**Shopkeeper** : Of course. The **changing room<sup>(2)</sup>** is here. .... What do you think? Does it **fit<sup>(3)</sup>**?

**Eman** : It's a bit big. Do you have a smaller **size<sup>(4)</sup>**?

**Shopkeeper** : Let me look. Yes, here's a smaller one. Try this on.

**Eman** : Thank you. It fits **perfectly<sup>(5)</sup>**, I'll take it!

**Shopkeeper** : Great!



- |                        |
|------------------------|
| المناسب خاصة (1)       |
| غرفة تغيير الملابس (2) |
| يناسب (3)              |
| مقاس (4)               |
| تماماً (5)             |



## Lesson 6



## Reading Text

## Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever sold anything online? If yes, was it a good experience or a bad one?

## 1. Read the advert and answer the questions.

SB page 42

**BAG FOR SALE**

I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather handbag. It was a present for my birthday but I already have one that is the same! It is very large and perfect for work or school. The price is LE 500. Email me for more information.



## Post-reading questions:

1. Why is the person selling the bag?
2. Would you like to buy this bag? Why/ Why not?



## Pre-reading question:

- Did you buy anything online before? What was it?

## 2. Read the advert. Which of the objects in Exercise 1 is it trying to sell?

WB page 31

I'm selling a cool, old wooden chest of drawers. It was made in 1910 for my great-grandfather! It's large and perfect for keeping things in, but we have moved house and our new home is too small for it. If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.

خزانة ذات أدراج



## 3. Read and correct the underlined words in this advert.

Would you like to **buy** a really useful tool?

غالي الثمن

I'm selling a nice strong **one** that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with **wood** at the top. It's perfect for people who want to grow vegetables – and the price is not **expensive**, it's very cheap!



Email me if you are interested.

Post-reading question: - What is this tool made of?

ALADWAA

تطبيق الأضواء

ذاكر دروسك

الآن بطريقة تفاعلية من خلال  
فيديوهات شرح الدرس.



حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من حلال

www.aladwaa.com

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 That shirt doesn't ..... you. You need a bigger one.

- a) save      b) stay      c) fit      d) work

2 My brother is going to ..... married.

- a) go      b) get      c) become      d) stay

3 When I bought this dress, I asked the shopkeeper to ..... it on first.

- a) try      b) get      c) go      d) look

4 The shops are very busy today. There are too many .....

- a) assistants      b) shopkeepers  
c) sellers      d) customers

5 I saw a/an ..... for a cool handbag. I'd like to buy it.

- a) message      b) email      c) advert      d) blog

6 They had important problems to .....

- a) discuss      b) produce      c) put      d) keep

7 I got lots of ..... for my birthday.

- a) presents      b) prices      c) awards      d) prizes

8 You can try on this jacket in the ..... room.

- a) dining      b) changing      c) living      d) sitting

9 That shop has a lot of objects ..... sale.

- a) to      b) by      c) for      d) off

10 My skirt fits me .....

- a) imperfect      b) imperfectly  
c) perfect      d) perfectly



 Speaking

## Shopping for clothes

## التسوق من أجل شراء الملابس

## Situation

## ما يقال في هذا الموقف

## Response

## جملة الرد

 Hello, can I help you? مرحباً، هل يمكنني مساعدتك؟

 I'm looking for a jacket for a special occasion. أبحث عن جاكيت لمناسبة خاصة.

 What type of jacket would you like? أي نوع من الجاكيت تريده؟

 I'd like something loose but smart. أريد جاكيت فضفاضاً ولكن أنيقاً.

 We have this black jacket, or that red one in the window. لدينا هذا الجاكيت الأسود أو ذلك الأحمر الذي في الفاترينة.

 Could I try on the blue one? هل يمكن أن أقيس الجاكيت الأزرق؟

 Of course. The changing room is there. بالطبع غرفة تغيير الملابس هناك.

 What do you think? Does it fit? ما رأيك؟ هل هو مناسب؟

 It's a bit big. I have a smaller one you can try on. إنه كبير قليلاً. لدى جاكيت أصغر يمكنك أن تقيسه.

 Thank you. Yes, this one fits perfectly. I'll take it! شكراً لك. هذا الجاكيت يناسبني تماماً. سوف أشتريه.

 Good. حسناً.

 Type a message.

Send   

## Speaking Exercise

**1** Complete the following dialogue:  
"Ayman wants to buy a jacket."

WR

**Ayman** : Can I help you?

**Ayman** : I'm (1) .....

**Shopkeeper** : What type of (2) ..... like?

**Ayman** : I'd like something (3) .....

**Shopkeeper** : We have (4) .....

**Ayman** : Could I try on (5) ..... ?

**Shopkeeper** : Of course. The changing room is over there.

**Ayman** : Does it fit?

**Shopkeeper** : It's a bit big. I have a smaller one you can try on.

**Ayman** : I'll take it!

**2** Complete the following dialogue:

"Shimaa is buying a pair of trousers."

**Shopkeeper** : Can I help you?

**Shimaa** : Yes, (1) ..... for a pair of trousers.

**Shopkeeper** : What colour would you like?

**Shimaa** : (2) ..... Do you have anything in cotton?

**Shopkeeper** : Yes, these.

**Shimaa** : (3) ..... them on?

**Shopkeeper** : Of course. The fitting room's over there.

**Shimaa** : They're a little long. (4) ..... anything shorter?

**Shopkeeper** : Yes, these are shorter.

**Shimaa** : OK! (5) ..... them.

# Lessons 5 & 6

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

"Sandra is at a clothes shop."

**Shopkeeper** : Can I help you?

**Sandra** : Yes, (1) ..... got any cotton dresses?

**Shopkeeper** : Yes, they're over there.

**Sandra** : Oh yes, I see I like the pink one. (2) .....

**Shopkeeper** : That one is 850 pounds.

**Sandra** : Could I try it on?

**Shopkeeper** : Yes, (3) ..... is there.

**Sandra** : Does it fit?

**Shopkeeper** : Yes, this one (4) ..... perfectly.

**Sandra** : Okay. (5) .....

**Shopkeeper** : Oh that's good.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1 The ..... of the T-shirt is 250 pounds.

- a) price      b) prize      c) size      d) width

2 My grandfather has a wooden ..... of drawers to keep his things in.

- a) chest      b) block      c) list      d) pile

3 I like to buy my things from local shops because the ..... are friendly.

- a) teenagers      b) customers      c) shopkeepers      d) guests

4 Girls wear scarves round their .....

- a) arms      b) legs      c) noses      d) necks

5 I can't find my pencil. I'm going to look ..... it.

- a) at      b) for      c) up      d) after

6 I can do many things on my mobile phone. It's very .....

- a) useless      b) useful      c) bad      d) dull

7 I like sports, so I'm ..... in football.

- a) interested      b) interest      c) interests      d) interesting

8 A: Would you like to try these shoes, sir?

B: No, the black ..... , please.

- a) one      b) ones      c) one's      d) ones'

- She has two children. The tall ..... is good at sports.
- These shoes are much more expensive than ..... shoes we saw yesterday.
- When you buy bananas, always buy the small ..... (one). They are the best.
- Do you want the red apple or the green ..... (ones)?
- It's a ..... (pink, cotton, striped) scarf.
- ..... (This) glasses are my favourite.

0 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

5B

0 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Samar to tell her about the shops in your town. Your name is Rania and your email address is rania@student.com and your friend's email address is samar@student.com.

6

25

### Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	

(1-15) (16-24) (25-30) (1-12) (13-20) (21-25) (1-25) (26-45) (46-55)

 Video Script

**Narrator:** Do you have to wear any special clothes for school? Do your parents have to wear any special clothes when they go to work?

Many people wear a uniform. This is so people know what school they go to or what job they do.

Some workers wear special clothes to keep them safe at work. These men are repairing a road. They are wearing bright yellow jackets so that car drivers can see them easily. This is a hard hat. **Construction workers**<sup>(1)</sup> wear these strong, plastic hats to protect their heads.

عمال البناء (1)

رجال الإطفاء (2)

مادة خام (3)

درجات الحرارة (4)

قفازات (5)

**Firefighters**<sup>(2)</sup> also wear special clothes while they are working. The jacket and trousers that they wear are made from a **material**<sup>(3)</sup> that protects firefighters from the dangerous, hot **temperatures**<sup>(4)</sup>. The helmet protects a firefighter's head and eyes from the fire and the **gloves**<sup>(5)</sup> protect their hands.

Do you know of any other jobs in which the workers have to wear special clothes?



تطبيق الأضواء

هل لديك سؤال في أي مادة؟

الآن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك من خلال خدمة **أسئلة الأضواء**  
وسنitem الرد عليك من خلال فريق متخصص



حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)

# Unit 10 Review



## Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

#### Key Vocabulary

advert	اعلان	headscarf	حجاب	scarf	وشاح/طربة
bamboo	الخيزران	hot climate	مناخ حار	sheet	ملایة
beautiful	جميل	industry	صناعة	shirt	قميص
belt	حزام	interested	مهتم	shopkeeper	صاحب محل
boots	حذاء برقبة	jewellery	مجوهرات	shorts	شورت
borrow (ed)	يستعير	jumper	بلوفر	simple	بسيط
casual	ملابس غير رسمية / كاجوال	leather	الجلد	size	مقاس/حجم
changing room	غرفة تغيير الملابس	linen	الكتان	smart	أنيق
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	loose	واسع/فضفاض	soft	طري/لين/ناعم
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	luxury	فخم/ترف	soil	تربيه زراعية
colourful	زاهي الألوان	material	قماش/مادة خام	special occasion	مناسبة خاصة
comfortable	مرrijح	metal	المعدن	sports clothes	ملابس رياضية
cotton	القطن	necklace	قلادة/عقد	strange	غريب
crops	محاصيل	occasion	المناسبة	striped	مقلم/مخطط
customer	زيون	own (ed)	يملك	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
discuss (ed)	يناقش	perfect (for)	ممتاز/مثالي/جيد لـ	teenager	مراهمق
dress (ed)	يلبس/يرتدى	perfectly	بشكل ممتاز/اتماماً	tie	رابطة عنق
earrings	حلق/قرط	pick (ed)	يقطف	traditional	تقليدي
family member	فرد من العائلة	plastic	البلاستيك	trainers	حذاء رياضي
fit (ed)	يتناسب/يلائم	pretty	جميل	trousers	بنطلون
get married	يتزوج	price	ثمن/سعر	try on	يقيس
glass	الزجاج	quality	جودة	useful	مفید
gold	الذهب	relaxed	مسترخ/مستريح	wedding	حفل زفاف
government	الحكومة	galabeya	جلباب	wood/wooden	خشب/خشبي
handbag	حقيبة يد	sandals	صندل/خف	wool	الصوف



## Language

### Adjective order

Description	Size	Shape	Age	Colour	Material	Noun
pretty	big	long	old	green	cotton	dress
nice	small	short	new	pink	gold	shirt

- Rich Egyptians wore beautiful gold necklaces.
- She likes loose, white, linen clothes.

### Demonstratives

#### this / that / these / those

- I like **this** phone a lot.
- That café looks good.
- Do you like **these** shoes?
- Those were the best days of my life.

#### one/ones

- Which is your car, the red **one** or the blue **one**?
- My trousers are old. I need some new **ones**.



## Speaking

### 1. Talking about clothes

1. How many pairs of shoes do you have? Which ones are your favourite?
  - I have about four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite.
2. Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?
  - I love casual clothing shops, but my favourite is sport clothing shops.

### 2. Shopping for clothes

- Hello, can I help you?
- What type of jacket would you like?
- Could I try on the blue one?
- What do you think? Does it fit?
- It's a bit big. I have a smaller one you can try on.
- Thank you. Yes, this one fits perfectly. I'll take it!

1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) Anas : How many pairs of shoes do you have?

Ibrahim : .....

B) Sameh : .....

Zeinab : The trousers are 300 pounds.

2) Match column A with column B:

A

1. Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple,
2. They're beautiful,
3. Women like to wear
4. I have to wear my school
5. It's a beautiful brown and

B

- a) blue trousers.
- b) orange necklace.
- c) uniform every school day.
- d) they loved to wear heavy, gold jewellery.
- e) gloves every day.
- f) beautiful gold necklaces.

Answers: 1. ( )      2. ( )      3. ( )      4. ( )      5. ( )

3) Write an email of about (5) sentences (50 words) to your friend to tell him about clothes in Ancient Egypt. Your name is Sara and your friend's name is Lamiaa.

# Test 4

(Based on Unit 10)

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب 4
- 1 What objects is the speaker talking about?  
a) Trousers.      b) Trainers.      c) Gloves.      d) Uniforms.
  - 2 A: Why did he ask his dad to have them? B: Because he ..... wore them.  
a) never      b) always      c) usually      d) often
  - 3 How are they?  
a) Luxury.      b) Small.      c) Large.      d) Better.
  - 4 Why does the speaker like wearing sports clothes? - Because they are .....  
a) comfortable      b) tiring      c) cheap      d) expensive

## 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tasneem is buying a skirt.

Assistant: Can I help you?

Tasneem : Yes, how much is that skirt?

Assistant: It's LE 400.

Tasneem : (1) ..... ?

Assistant: Yes, what size are you?

Tasneem : (2) ..... know.

Assistant: OK, try size 10. (3) ..... is over there.

Tasneem : (4) ..... have it in a bigger size?

Assistant: Yes, here you are.

Tasneem : (5) ..... . I'll take it.

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hatem has a happy family. His wife is called Nermene. They are teachers at the same school. They have got two children. They like to wear good quality clothes. Hatem and Nermene usually tell them that they should be smart, so they buy them new clothes from time to time. Usually, Hamdi and his sister Lama like wearing casual clothes such as T-shirts and trainers. Today, they are wearing clothes for a special occasion. It is their grandfather's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday! Hamdi is wearing a smart, blue jacket. Lama is wearing a loose, cotton dress with a pretty pair of earrings. Hamdi also has a new pair of trousers. He bought them online, so he did not try them on first. They are a bit big, so he is wearing a leather belt, too.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1 What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

2 How old is their grandfather?

3 What is Hatem's job?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4 There are ..... person(s) in Hatem's family.

- a) one      b) two      c) three      d) four

5 Hamid and Lama wear ..... clothes.

- a) old      b) ancient      c) traditional      d) casual

6 Hamid's belt is made of .....

- a) wool      b) cotton      c) leather      d) metal

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 My mother likes to wear big and ..... dresses.

- a) short      b) loose      c) small      d) little

2 Your dress is very ..... I want to buy one like it.

- a) ugly      b) gloomy      c) dull      d) pretty

3 Farmers pick cotton by hand to make it .....

- a) soft      b) hard      c) dead      d) bad

4 I like to wear ..... clothes.

- a) sport      b) sports      c) sport's      d) sports'

5 My father likes to wear a suit on a ..... occasion.

- a) private      b) special      c) general      d) public

6 His trousers are a bit large, so he wears a .....

- a) belt      b) scarf      c) necklace      d) tie

7 She is wearing ..... because it's very sunny.

- a) trousers      b) scarves      c) gloves      d) sunglasses

- 8 How much are ..... necklaces in the window?  
 a) that      b) those      c) one      d) ones
- 9 Where's my blouse, Mai? The ..... I got from Aunt Amal.  
 a) that      b) those      c) one      d) ones
- 10 He's got ..... eyes.  
 a) blue big      b) big blue      c) a blue big      d) a big blue

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 I bought a pair of ..... (leather/ black) shoes.
- 2 The new smartphones are much faster than the old ..... (one).
- 3 This bag is very old. I need a new ..... (one's).
- 4 Look at ..... (that) clouds.

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

**"A short advert to sell an item of clothes"**

**Unit  
10**



## Research Projects



### 1. Special occasions

Do research on "Special occasions".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What is special about these occasions?
- What should people wear?
- What are the traditions of these occasions?
- What is your favourite occasion? And what do you do?



### 2. Cotton industry

Do research on "Cotton industry".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- Which countries are famous for cotton industry?
- Do you think there are a lot of people working in the cotton industry? How many jobs can you think of that people in the cotton industry do?
- The cotton industry makes cotton clothes. What other things does it make?
- What's the effect of the cotton industry on the income of the countries?



- 1 ► A suitable title
- 2 ► An introduction
- 3 ► Main ideas and information
- 4 ► Results
- 5 ► Resources



# ALAWA OASIS

Describe the things in the pictures using the words in brackets.



(long, black and yellow, srtriped)



(beautiful, black, car)



(brown, leather, new)



(big, plastic, red)



(old, big, traditional)



(long, old, wooden)



## Unit 11 *The future of our planet*

### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** : Online posts about helping the environment; texts about a school trip; an article about teenage inventors; a postcard

**Writing** : A paragraph about an environmental problem; a holiday postcard

**Listening** : Identifying what is going to happen; a radio programme about environmental problems; a teacher talking about drones; a discussion about making arrangements

**Speaking** : Making predictions and future plans; suggesting solutions; giving opinions

**Language** : *be going to* and the present continuous for the future

**Life Skills** : Problem solving; Negotiation; Collaboration



Tapescript

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 44-47 WB pages 100 & 101

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1				
air pollution	تلويث الهواء	planet	كوكب	يتفقد/يحفظ/يدخر
approach	يقرب من	plant (ed)	يزرع	الواح شمسية
environment	البيئة	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع	حركة المرور
flood (ed) (v/n)	يفيض/فيضان	reduce (d)	يقلل	بسور
improve (d)	يحسن	repair = fix (ed)	يصلح	الحياة البرية
install (ed)	يثبت	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام	تurbines of wind
Lesson 2				
alarm clock	منبه	hunter	صياد	ثلج
environmental problems	المشاكل البيئية	local people	السكان المحليون	يحل
extra	إضافي	melt (ed)	ينصهر/ينذوب	عاصفة
go trekking	ينذهب للترحال	race	سباق	سوء الحظ

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1				
amount	كمية	danger	خطر	حريق/نار
because of	بسبب	departure	مغادرة/رحيل	شقة
building	مبني	electric car	سيارة كهربائية	مياه الفيضان
city/town	مدينة	electricity	الكهرباء	لقيق
climate change	تغير المناخ	England	إنجلترا	مباراة كرة قدم
country	دولة	equipment	معدات	الهند

intention	نية	river	نهر	teenager	مراهق
Kaziranga National Park	حديقة كازيرانجا الوطنية	rubbish	قمامة	the sun's light	ضوء الشمس
later	فيما بعد	send	يرسل	tiger	نمر
online post	منشور عبر الانترنت	size	حجم	washing machine	غسالة
part	جزء	somewhere	في مكان ما	windy	عاصف/كثير الرياح
ready	جاهز/مستعد	sunny	مشمس		
<b>Lesson 2</b>					
event	حدث/ المناسبة	path	ممر	station square	ميدان المحطة
happen (ed)	يحدث	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	stop	محطة (اتوبوس)
hotel	فندق	radio programme	برنامج إذاعي	tonight	الليلة
lunchtime	وقت الغداء	snoring	صوت الشخير	village	قرية

### Language Expressions

### العبارات اللغوية

#### Lesson 1

get ▶ worse	يزداد سوءاً	pick up ▶ rubbish	يلقط القمامة
help ▶ the environment	يساعد البيئة	plant ▶ trees	يزرع أشجاراً
install ▶ solar panels	يثبت الواحات الشمسية	recycle ▶ mobile phones	يعيد تدوير الهواتف المحمولة
keep ▶ safe	يحافظ على أمن	reuse ▶ plastic bottles	يعيد استخدام الزجاجات البلاستيكية
make ▶ a roof garden	ينشئ حديقة على سطح	save ▶ wildlife	ينقذ الحياة البرية
electricity	يصنع كهرباء	start ▶ a project	يبدا مشروعنا

#### Lesson 2

catch ▶ the bus	يلحق автобус	get ▶ good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة
cause ▶ pollution	يسبب تلوثاً	kill ▶ the desert animals	يقتل الحيوانات الصحراوية
damage ▶ the environment	يدمر البيئة	have ▶ a vote on	يجري تصويتاً على
do ▶ homework	يؤدي الواجب المدرسي	leave ▶ rubbish	يترك القمامة
▶ well	يؤدي جيداً	make ▶ predictions	يقوم بتنبؤات
find ▶ a solution	يجد حلّاً	▶ money	يكون مالاً

# UNIT 11

## حروف الجر

### Prepositions

#### Lesson 1

at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
change into	يتغير إلى / يتتحول إلى
from tomorrow	من الغد

seem to	يبدو أن
in front of	أمام
on the roof of	على سطح

pick up	يلقط
plan to + inf.	يلخص
save from	يلذم

#### Lesson 2

based on	قائم على
drive across	يقود عبر

get off	ينزل
get up	ينهض / يستيقظ

go off	يزنن (المعنى)
on your own	بمفردهك

### Words and Opposites

### الكلمات وعکسها

#### Lesson 1

dangerous	خطير
good for	مفيدة

safe	آمن
bad for	ضار

healthy	صحي
get off	يزنن

#### Lesson 2

drought	جفاف
---------	------

flood	فيضان
-------	-------

win/won	يفوز / يكسب
lose/lost	يُسرّ / يفقد

### تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

### Conjugations of irregular verbs

#### Present

#### Past simple

#### Past participle

#### Lesson 1

break	يكسر
bring	يحضر
throw away	يرمى بعيداً

broke	
brought	
threw away	

broken	
brought	
thrown away	

#### Lesson 2

catch	يلحق بـ
drive	يقود / يسوق
fall down	يقع / يسقط
forget	ينسى
ring	يرن
understand	يفهم

caught	
drove	
fell down	
forgot	
rang	
understood	

caught	
driven	
fallen down	
forgotten	
rung	
understood	

## التعريفات

## Definitions

Lesson 1	يثبت	put equipment somewhere so it is ready to use
install	يقلل	make something less in amount or size
reduce	يصلاح	fix something that is broken
repair	يتقدّم	make something safe from danger
save	الواح شمسية	equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity
solar panels	توربينات الرياح	equipment that uses the wind to make electricity
wind turbine		

## Language Notes

## adjectives end in -al

## الصفات المنتهية بـ (al)

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
environment البيئة	environmental بيئي	nature الطبيعة	natural طبيعي
music الموسيقى	musical موسيقي	tradition التقليد	traditional تقليدي

• These chemicals cause serious environmental damage.

• Our skin cream contains only natural ingredients.

## (2) stop .... from + v. ing

## يمنع .... من

• I think they should stop people from driving across the desert.



## Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The ..... way of life nearly disappeared.  
 a) environment      b) environmental      c) traditional      d) tradition
- 2 Some chemicals may cause ..... damage.  
 a) environment      b) environmental      c) musical      d) music
- 3 ..... gives us everything that we need.  
 a) Nature      b) Natural      c) Music      d) Musical

## Write it right

### How to help the environment

كيفية مساعدة البيئة

- Our natural environment gives us everything that we need.
- We get (ما نحصل عليه من البيئة) from the environment.
- We can save the environment by (طرق الحفاظ على البيئة)
- We should never (ما لا يجب فعله)
- We can recycle many things instead of throwing them away.
- Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.

#### Example

#### The environment

Our natural environment gives us everything that we need. We get air, water, food, and many other things from the environment. We can save the environment by making sure that we take care of the nature. We should save water. Water is very important in our environment, so we should never pollute water. We can recycle many things instead of throwing them away. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution. We should plant more trees. This will help to improve the size of natural places for animals. We should teach our children to look after the environment.

#### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: "How to save the environment"

"How to save the environment"

#### Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

ستتم تغطية متنوعة من الأسلوبات في الكتابة. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة في الفقرة.

Lesson 1



## Reading Text

## Pre-reading question:

- How can we help the environment?

1. Read some **online posts<sup>(1)</sup>** from **teenagers<sup>(2)</sup>** who want to help the **environment<sup>(3)</sup>**. Match each post with one of the photos from page 44.  
Use a dictionary to search for difficult words.

SB page 45

The rivers in Kaziranga National Park in India often **flood<sup>(4)</sup>** and the problem is getting worse because of **climate change<sup>(5)</sup>**. Later this year, I'm going to help my father to save wildlife from the flood water. This can be dangerous, but my father works in the park and he knows how to keep me safe!



There's a lot of air **pollution<sup>(6)</sup>** from the **traffic<sup>(7)</sup>** in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution – so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.



I love phones, but I know that throwing away old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a **project<sup>(8)</sup>** in school to recycle mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and we're going to reuse parts from them to **repair<sup>(9)</sup>** other phones.



## Post-reading question:

- What is the biggest problem that faces our environment?

منشورات عبر الانترنت (1)

مراهقون (2)

البيئة (3)

ينهض (4)

تغير المناخ (5)

تلوث الماء (6)

حركة المروء (7)

مشروع (8)

يصلح (9)

**Pre-listening question:**

- What are you going to do at the weekend?

**2. Listen and complete the sentences with the correct form of these verbs to say what is going to happen.**

*SB page 45*

(1) **Boy** : Oh no! Look at the time! It's 9 o'clock! Come on quick!

*(They are going to be late.)*

(2) **Girl 1** : The water's a bit cold at first but it's lovely. Come on Huda! Come and join me!

**Girl 2** : OK, I'm coming!

*(Huda is going to go swimming.)*

(3) [Sound of snoring then alarm clock ringing. Snoring stops and person wakes up]

*(He's going to get up.)*

يتنبأ من (1)

سباق (2)

(4) **Voice**: We are now approaching<sup>(1)</sup> Station Square.

**Boy 1**: Is this our stop?

**Boy 2**: Yes, it is. Come on.

*(They are going to get off the bus.)*



(5) **Commentator**: And they're near the finishing line now and suddenly Farida seems to be running faster. Nothing can stop her now. Just look at her go!



*(Farida is going to win the race<sup>(2)</sup>.)*

(6) **Boy** : Oh, I'm tired. But it's only nine o'clock!

**Woman** : Yes, but you've got school in the morning, Omar.

**Boy** : You're right. Good night, Mum. Good night, Huda.

*(Omar is going to go to bed.)*

**Post-listening question:**

- What is Farida going to do?

## Lesson 2



## Listening Text

**Pre-listening question:** - What do you know about Wadi Rum?

5. Listen to a radio programme about beautiful places in the world and check your answers to Exercise 4.

SB page 47

**Speaker:**

Wadi Rum is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and **wildlife**<sup>(1)</sup>.

Unfortunately<sup>(2)</sup>, Wadi Rum has some environmental problems<sup>(3)</sup>.

Tourists help the local people<sup>(4)</sup> make money, but when tourists go trekking<sup>(5)</sup> in the desert, they often leave rubbish, too.

Some tourists drive across the desert in cars: they don't use roads or paths, but drive wherever they want to and this can damage plants and wildlife.

The hotels use lots of water which can be a problem in the desert. But they are building new hotels so even more tourists will go there.

Another big problem is hunters who kill the desert animals. They shouldn't do this and there aren't enough people to stop them. There is much less wildlife now than in the past and soon there won't be any.

**Post-listening question:** - What shouldn't tourists do?



الحياة البرية (1)

لسوء الحظ (2)

مشاكل بيئية (3)

السكان المحليون (4)

يُنحب للترحال (5)



## Life Skills

1. Do you think it is best to find solutions to a problem on your own, or as a group? Why?
2. If you work in a group, how can you decide whose solution is the best one?

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

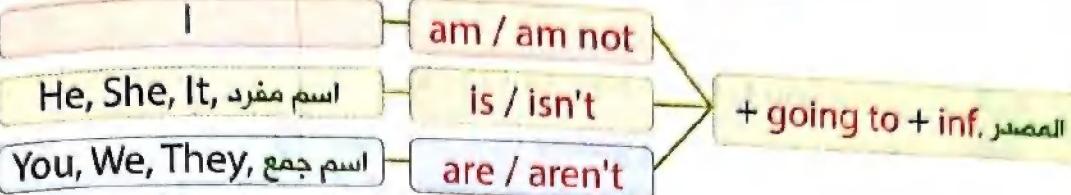
- 1 My father called an engineer to ..... our washing machine.  
 a) reduce      b) install      c) protect      d) forget
- 2 Using bad chemicals is killing birds, fish and .....  
 a) roof      b) electricity      c) rubbish      d) wildlife
- 3 Climate change can cause ice to .....  
 a) melt      b) change      c) throw      d) produce
- 4 Some buildings use solar ..... for collecting the sun's heat.  
 a) roofs      b) poles      c) panels      d) boards
- 5 Trees are good for the environment and help ..... air pollution.  
 a) rewrite      b) reuse      c) recycle      d) reduce
- 6 The engineer is coming to ..... our phone tomorrow morning.  
 a) repair      b) reduce      c) cause      d) throw
- 7 I usually get up when my ..... clock goes off.  
 a) fire      b) alarm      c) school      d) arm
- 8 They're doing exercises to ..... their fitness.  
 a) produce      b) reduce      c) improve      d) kill
- 9 Wind ..... generate electricity for the local community.  
 a) alarms      b) turbines      c) machines      d) panels
- 10 You need special ..... if you want to go scuba diving.  
 a) alarms      b) equipment      c) solutions      d) turbines
- 11 Don't get ..... the bus before it stops.  
 a) off      b) for      c) at      d) up
- 12 I'd like to go ..... in the desert.  
 a) swimming      b) diving      c) fishing      d) trekking
- 13 ..... Wadi Rum has some environmental problems.  
 a) Luckily      b) Unfortunately      c) Fortunately      d) Happily
- 14 Tourists help the local people ..... money.  
 a) make      b) do      c) sell      d) lose
- 15 Some people ..... a roof garden to plant more trees.  
 a) make      b) do      c) collect      d) reduce



## Language

### *be going to*

**Form**  
التكوين



**Usage**  
الاستخدام

#### 1. We use ***be going to + verb*** to talk about our intentions for the future.

١- تستخدم للتعبير عن نية أو قصد لفعل شيء في المستقبل تم التخطيط له.

- I'm going to help my father.
- I'm not going to go on a holiday this week.
- He is going to throw away his old phone.
- He isn't going to travel to England this year.
- They're going to try rock climbing next month.
- They aren't going to visit their grandparents next week.

#### 2. We use ***be going to + verb*** to make predictions about the future based on what we can see or know.

٢- تستخدم لعمل تنبؤات حول المستقبل بناءً على ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته (تنبؤ بدليل).

- I can see some dark clouds. It is going to rain.
- The students are going to do very well in their exams. They always get good marks.
- Watch out! The baby is going to fall.

**Question**  
السؤال

#### Yes/No questions:

Am/Is/Are + subject + الفاعل + going to + inf. ....?

- Is your sister going to get married next year?
- Are the children going to play tomorrow?

#### Wh- questions:

+ am/is/are + subject + الفاعل + going to + inf. ....?  
أداة استفهام

- What are you going to do?
- How is she going to help the environment?

## Language Exercises

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 He's driving too fast. He ..... have an accident!  
 a) is going      b) is going to      c) will      d) going to
- 2 A: Why are you taking the camera? B: I ..... take photos.  
 a) going to      b) am going to      c) going      d) am going
- 3 A: Have you decided what to do with the washing machine?  
 B: Yes, I ..... a new one.  
 a) buy      b) am going to      c) going to buy      d) am going to buy
- 4 Are you watching the game? It's 5/2, they ..... win the match!  
 a) am going      b) am going to      c) are going to      d) going to
- 5 Look at that beautiful sky! It ..... rain today.  
 a) is going to      b) isn't going to      c) will      d) won't
- 6 I can't join you at the party, I'm going ..... away for two weeks.  
 a) will be      b) being      c) be      d) to be
- 7 A: What are your plans after you leave university?  
 B: I'm going to ..... in a hospital.  
 a) work      b) working      c) worked      d) works
- 8 A: Why do you need to borrow my suitcase?  
 B: I ..... visit my mother in Aswan next month.  
 a) going to      b) 's going to      c) 're going to      d) 'm going to
- 9 ..... to travel to Luxor?  
 a) You will      b) Are you going      c) You are going      d) Are you

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 I ..... (going / take) some photos at the weekend.
- 2 We ..... (not / going ) play football tomorrow.
- 3 ..... (you / going) to call me tonight?
- 4 My uncle ..... (buy) a birthday present for Hany.
- 5 Look at the clouds! It ..... (rain) soon.
- 6 Mariam's sister is going to ..... (having) a baby.

## Speaking



## Making predictions and future plans

## **عمل تنبؤات وخطط مستقبلية**

الموقف

## Reply

۲۷۱

 What are you going to do at the weekend?  
ماذا سوف تفعل في العطلة الأسبوعية؟

I'm going to visit my grandparents.  سوف ازور أجدادى.

 How are you going to improve your English?  
كيف ستتطور لغتك الإنجليزية؟

I'm going to have holiday courses.   
سأقوم بالحصول على دورات تدريبية صيفية.

 Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?   
هل ستقوم بإعادة تصنيع هاتفك عندما يصبح قديماً؟

Sure. I'm going to reuse old parts from it to repair other phones.   
بالتأكيد. سوف أقوم بإعادة استخدام أجزاء منه لإصلاح هواتف أخرى.

## Speaking Exercise

### **Complete the following dialogue:**

**"Hend and Walaa are talking about holiday plans."**

Hend :Hi, Walaa. How are you?

**Walaa:** Fine, Hend. What about you?

Hend : Fine, thanks (1)

next holiday?

Walaa: I'm going to travel to London.

Hend : Really? (s)

Walaa : Rose

Hand : Because I want to (3) .... English there?

Walaa : (A)

Holiday courses.

Walaas (E)

India: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

•(5)

# Lessons 1 & 2

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

"Randa and Rania are talking about their plans for the weekend."

Randa : What are you going to do this weekend?

Rania : (1) ..... see a new play at the theatre tomorrow.

Randa : (2) ..... got the tickets?

Rania : No, I am going to get them this afternoon. Would you like to come?

Randa : Oh, thank you. That would be nice.

Rania : OK, I'm (3) ..... get you a ticket, too.

Randa : Great! (4) ..... ?

Rania : It starts at eight o'clock, but we are all going to meet at 7.15.

Randa : OK, I (5) ..... you, but I will be there around 7.30.

Rania : That's fine.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 One of the biggest dangers facing us is ..... change.

- a) weather      b) climate      c) air      d) nature

2 When water increases in rivers, there is a .....

- a) roof      b) crop      c) flood      d) drought

3 Some children tried to help the environment by ..... up rubbish.

- a) picking      b) getting      c) looking      d) saving

4 They ..... empty tins to use them again.

- a) drive      b) save      c) throw      d) recycle

5 Our father looks after us to ..... us safe.

- a) keep      b) catch      c) do      d) change

6 Many tourists like to drive ..... the desert.

- a) cross      b) across      c) away      d) a way

7 Some students ..... to start a project to help the environment.

- a) get      b) go      c) plan      d) pick

8 I've bought a new book. Tonight, I ..... stay at home and start reading it.

- a) going      b) am going      c) going to      d) am going to

5

10

9 It looks delicious! We ..... this meal so much!

- a) enjoys
- b) going to enjoy
- c) are going to
- d) are going to enjoy

10 Are you ..... go out this weekend?

- a) going
- b) going to
- c) will
- d) not going

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1 They are ..... (going / get) a new computer.

2 Nabil ..... (not / going) give a party next week.

3 Watch out! You are going ..... (hurt) yourself.

4 I'm ..... (going / buy) vegetables at the supermarket.

6

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A project to help the environment"

25

### Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	

(1-14) (15-24) (25-30)      (1-12) (13-20) (21-25)      (1-27) (28-45) (46-55)

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48-50 WB pages 102&103



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

#### Lesson 3

develop	يطور	mangrove	شجرة المنجروف	suitable	مناسب
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	midday	متنصف النهار	suitcase	حقيبة سفر
film (ed)	يصور فيلماً	nature conservation	الحفاظ على الطبيعة	sunhat	قبعة شمس
forest	غابة	remote control	جهاز التحكم عن بعد	solutions	حلول
lend	يسلف	seed	بذرة	volunteer	متطلع

#### Lesson 4

array	مجموعة/مصفوفة	filter	فلتر (جهاز للتنقية)	lorry	شاحنة/لوري
bacteria	بكتيريا	forever	إلى الأبد	microorganisms	كائنات دقيقة
canal	قناة/ترعة	green	أخضر/نظيف (للبيئة)	ocean	محيط
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	jungle	أدغال	pollute (d)	يلوث
chemistry	الكيمياء	kill (ed)	يقتل	sea life	الحياة البحريّة
decay (ed)	يتحلل/يتعرّض	light	الضوء	system	نظام
environment-friendly	صديق للبيئة	liquid	سائل	trainers	صربين

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

#### Lesson 3

arrangements	ترتيبات	diving	الغطس	Ras Mohammad Nature Reserve	محمية رأس محمد الطبيعية
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	letter	خطاب	school trip	رحلة مدرسية
delivery	توصيل	museum	متحف	share (d)	يشارك
dentist	طبيب أسنان	plant (ed)	يزرع	swimming	السباحة
diary	مذكرات/يوميات	project	مشروع	text message	رسالة نصية

amount

كمية

article

مقال

determine

يحدد

disappear (ed)

يختفي

fantastic

رائع

farmland

ارض زراعية

Holland

هولندا (دولة)

invent (ed)

يخترع

invention

اختراع

irrigate (d)

يرموي

life forms

اشكال الحياة

location

موقع

machine

آلة

naturally

بشكل طبيعي

normal

عادى

Ocean Cleanup Array

مجموعة تنظيف المحيط

organised

منظم

plastic rubbish

قمامة بلاستيكية

perhaps

ربما

recycling bin

سلة القمامة

smart app

تطبيق ذكي

tools

ادوات/معدات

tortoise

سلحفاة

Turkey

تركيا (دولة)

## Language Expressions

## العبارات اللغوية

Lesson 3

▶ a train

يلحق القطار

save

▶ water/energy يوفر الماء/الطاقة

complete

▶ a simple form

يكمel استمارa بسيطة

present

▶ solutions يقدم حلولاً

see

▶ a play

يشاهد مسرحية

irrigate

▶ the land يروي الأرض

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

Lesson 3

at the school gates

عند بوابات المدرسة

In what ways

بأى الطرق

take part in

يشارك في

example of

مثال على

leave for

يغادر/يسافر إلى

walk in the mountains

يعيش في الجبال

from the ground

من الأرض

look after

يهم/يعتنى بـ

without

بدون

go on a trip

يذهب في رحلة

instead of

بدلاً من

work on a project

يعمل في مشروع

Lesson 4

according to

طبقاً

clean up

ينظف

fly over

يطير فوق

a problem with

مشكلة في

connected to

متصل بـ

in five days

خلال خمسة أيام

better for

أفضل لـ

different from

مختلف عن

start to

يبدأ ان

bits of

أجزاء من

drop onto

يلقى على

take out

يخرج

# UNIT 11

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعکسها

Lesson 3

**useful**

مفید

**useless**

غير مفید

**suitable**

مناسب

**unsuitable**

Lesson 4

**dirty**

قذر/متسخ

**clean**

نظيف

**expensive**

غالي

**cheap**

## Conjugations of Irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

### Present

### Past simple

### Past participle

Lesson 3

**lend**

يسلف

**lent**

**lent**

**meet**

يقابل

**met**

**met**

Lesson 4

**hurt**

يؤذي/يؤلم

**hurt**

**hurt**

**take**

يأخذ

**took**

**taken**

## Definitions

## التعريفات

Lesson 4

**bacteria**

بكتيريا

microorganisms that are everywhere but are too small to see and can make you ill

**chemicals**

مواد كيميائية

things you can make in chemistry

**filters**

الفلاتر

tools that take things out of liquids such as water

**green**

أخضر/نظيف للبيئة

good for the environment

**system**

نظام

an organised way of doing something

**location**

موقع

the place or position of a particular area of land

**Language Notes****The order of the time expressions**

- 1 - in five minutes
- this afternoon/evening
- tomorrow
- the day after tomorrow
- next week
- in 10 days' time
- in three weeks

ترتيب تعبيرات الوقت

- في غضون خمس دقائق

- بعد ظهر هذا اليوم/هذا المساء

- غداً

- بعد غد

- الأسبوع القائم

- في غضون ١٠ أيام

- في غضون ثلاثة أسابيع

**see/watch/hear + v+ing/inf.**

- 2 Deepika **saw** children **drinking** water from a dirty canal.

**Check Point**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The bus will arrive in five ..... time at 12.30 on Monday.

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| <b>a)</b> day   | <b>b)</b> days  |
| <b>c)</b> day's | <b>d)</b> days' |

2 I saw Mona ..... the road alone!

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>a)</b> crossing | <b>b)</b> to cross |
| <b>c)</b> crossed  | <b>d)</b> across   |

3 I can hear people ..... They must be in the next room.

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| <b>a)</b> talks   | <b>b)</b> taking |
| <b>c)</b> talking | <b>d)</b> talked |

## Write it right

How to write about environmental problems we are going to solve in the future  
كيف تكتب عن المشاكل البيئية التي نسعى لحلها في المستقبل

- The environment is the place where we all live.
- There are some problems that damage life on our planet, the earth.
- We can use technology to help solve some of these problems.
- Water pollution is a serious problem.
- In the future, we may use a system that can filter water to be clean and to kill bacteria in water.



### Writing tips

Use the coherence strategies to make your paragraph easy to follow.  
الترابط المنطقي للأفكار لكي  
يسهل سهلة التقييم.

### Example



**To** : tarek@student.com

**From** : hisham@student.com

**Subject** : Environmental problems

**Dear Tarek,**

I'd like to talk to you about our environment. The environment is the place where we all live. But there are some problems that damage life on our planet, the earth. The main problems are pollution and global warming which cause climate change. Our daily activities help damage the environment. We can use technology to solve some of these problems. For example, when we use electric cars, air pollution will be reduced because these cars don't pollute the environment. Water pollution is also a serious problem. In the future, we may use a system that can filter water to be clean and to kill bacteria in water. Furthermore, we will recycle most of our rubbish that damages the environment.

Write soon.

**Yours,  
Hisham**

Lesson 3



## Listening Text

**Post-listening question:** - How can we help stop air pollution?

2. Listen to a science teacher talking about drones and check your answers to Exercise 1.

**Scientist :** Drones<sup>(1)</sup> can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them: we can use remote control<sup>(2)</sup>. This means we can control<sup>(3)</sup> drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

**Boy :** Really? How can we do that?

**Scientist :** Well, companies are going to use drones a lot instead of lorries to make deliveries. This is going to help the environment<sup>(4)</sup> because drones don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

**Boy :** That's interesting.

**Scientist :** Yes, and we are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can fly over places where people can't go. We can see if there are any problems. For example, we can use drones to help save wildlife after floods<sup>(5)</sup> or fires.

**Boy :** Can they help people, too?

**Scientist :** Of course! We can send drones to dangerous places. For example, we are starting to use drones to check wind turbines. This is not an easy job. Wind energy is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. We can even use drones to plant trees. Drones can drop seeds onto the ground in places that people can't go to. And they don't need to stop and have a rest!

SB page 48



طائرات بدون طيار (1)



جهاز التحكم عن بعد (2)

يتحكم في (3)

البيئة (4)

فيضانات (5)

**Post-listening question:** - How can drones help us?

**Pre-reading question:**

- What do you know about Ras Mohammed Nature Reserve? And what do you think you can see and do there?

**7. Read the letter and text message about a trip to Ras Mohammad.**

*Use a dictionary if you don't know the meaning of a word.*

*SB page 41*

Dear parents

The bus will be leaving for Ras Mohammad from the school tomorrow at 6.30 am and returning in five days' time at 12.30 pm on Thursday 11<sup>th</sup> June.



Please make sure that your daughter has suitable clothes for the swimming and diving trips to the **coral reefs**<sup>(1)</sup> on Monday and Tuesday. They will also need good **trainers**<sup>(2)</sup> and a **sunhat**<sup>(3)</sup> for the visit to the **mangrove**<sup>(4)</sup> forest on Wednesday. We will be taking part in the **conservation project**<sup>(5)</sup> in the mangrove forest and helping to plant new trees.

- شجاع مرجانية (1)
- احذية رياضية (2)
- قبعة شمس (3)
- شجرة المعنوف (4)
- مشروع الحفاظ على البيئة (5)
- يسلف (6)
- حقيقة سفر (7)

Hi, Laila

We aren't sharing a room.

Mrs Nagwa says the older students have to help look after the younger girls. Can we meet at the school gates tomorrow morning at 6 am?

I need to give you the trainers I'm **lending**<sup>(6)</sup> you so that you can put them in your **suitcase**<sup>(7)</sup>.

Habiba

Type a message

**Post-reading question:** - In your opinion, how will Habiba's trip be?

Lesson 3



## Listening Text

Pre-listening question:  
What are you going to do this evening?

3. Listen and complete Khaled's diary.

WB page 102



Khaled: It's 12 o'clock on Saturday, but I'm going to be busy for the next few days. So, what am I doing? This evening, I'm going to the theatre to see a play. Then tomorrow, I'm playing basketball in the park. The day after tomorrow, I'm helping my uncle in his shop after school. Then, next Saturday, we're taking my cousins to the desert. That should be fun. But I'm really looking forward to our holidays! We're flying to Greece, but that's in nine days' time. I can't wait!

Post-listening question:  
When is Khaled going to go to the desert?



**Pre-reading question:** - Plastic is bad for the environment, what can you do to help in solving this problem?

**Read the article and check your answers to Exercise 1.**

SB page 50

### Fantastic green<sup>(1)</sup> inventions by teenagers

Green inventions are environment-friendly<sup>(1)</sup>. These inventions present solutions to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

Boyan Slat was a student in Holland when he invented a system to take plastic rubbish from the sea. There is a lot of plastic in our seas, which kills<sup>(2)</sup> lots of wildlife<sup>(3)</sup>. Boyan's system is called Ocean Cleanup Array<sup>(4)</sup>. It uses machines whose arms have lots of filters<sup>(5)</sup> on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water, without<sup>(6)</sup> hurting sea life.

Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a green system for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink.

When she visited her grandparents in India, Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal<sup>(7)</sup>. Before this, systems for cleaning water were expensive and used dangerous chemicals<sup>(8)</sup> which pollute<sup>(9)</sup> the environment. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill bacteria<sup>(10)</sup> in water.

Five Egyptian students from STEM Schools were able to develop an app to help small farmers save water and energy. In this app farmers complete a simple form with information about their farmlands. This form is connected to a smart app which tells farmers the right amount of water that they need to irrigate their lands. The app also determines the amount of energy and the number of workers the lands need, according to their location and the season.

**Post-reading question:** - What other environmental problems in the world do we need green inventions to help us solve?



- |                         |
|-------------------------|
| صديق للبيئة (1)         |
| يقتل (2)                |
| الحياة البرية (3)       |
| يمهونا تنظيف المحيط (4) |
| قدر الجمرة للتنفسة (5)  |
| بدون (6)                |
| فناة (7)                |
| مواد كيميائية (8)       |
| يلوث (9)                |
| بكتيريا (10)            |

**Vocabulary Exercises**

*Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:*

Today, some people use ..... to film dangerous places.

- a) tools      b) alarms      c) drones      d) pilots

My brother always hides the remote ..... from me, so I can't watch TV.

- a) drone      b) control      c) alarm      d) canal

You should wear the clothes that are ..... for your age.

- a) harmful      b) environmental      c) natural      d) suitable

I decided to join the ..... project to help the environment.

- a) conservation      b) conversation      c) ocean      d) liquid

Most boys want to ..... in the football school team.

- a) take part      b) take out      c) take out of      d) take from

Plastic never ..... and stays in the environment forever.

- a) cleans      b) melts      c) grows      d) decays

When my father travels abroad, he usually takes his ..... to put his things in.

- a) suitcase      b) tools      c) equipment      d) machine

He likes to write everything that happened to him every day on his .....

- a) daily      b) book      c) dairy      d) diary

I have many problems ..... my car, so I took it to the mechanic.

- a) with      b) to      c) at      d) in

Don't worry. There's enough time to ..... the train.

- a) hold      b) stop      c) improve      d) catch

I asked my best friend to ..... me his pencil.

- a) borrow      b) lend      c) take      d) look

A ..... is a person who does things without any money.

- a) shopkeeper      b) customer      c) volunteer      d) assistant

I like to go ..... to see coral reefs.

- a) riding      b) diving      c) walking      d) sailing

A ..... is a place with lots of trees.

- a) forest      b) desert      c) cave      d) mountain

When do you ..... school?

- a) get      b) leave for      c) travel      d) arrive



# Language

## The present continuous tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

**Form**  
التكوين



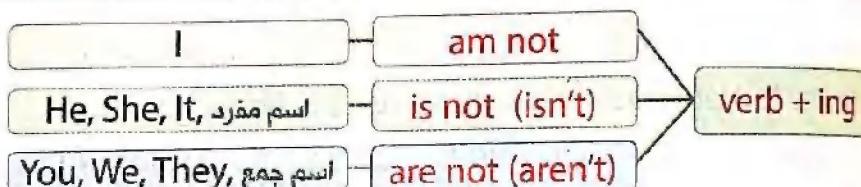
We use the present continuous for future plans and arrangements, often with a time and date.

**Usage**  
الاستخدام

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية، غالباً مع الوقت والتاريخ (الشيء المرتقب).

- I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
- We're catching our train at 12.30. We aren't taking the bus.

**Negative**  
النفي



- I'm not travelling to Alex.
- We aren't sharing a room with anyone.
- On Sunday, he isn't meeting his friends.

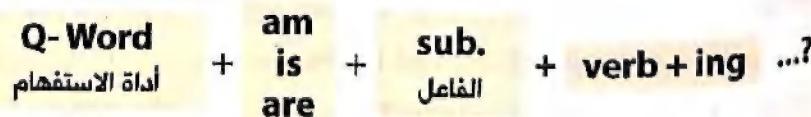
**Question**  
السؤال

### 1. Yes/No questions:



- Are they visiting their aunt the day after tomorrow?
- Is your father travelling to London in two weeks' time?

### 2. Wh-questions:



- What are you doing this afternoon?
- Where is Nader travelling next week?

## Language Exercises

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 I ..... Aswan with my parents next weekend.

- a) I'm going      b) went      c) go      d) I'm going to

2 What ..... tomorrow evening?

- b) are going to do  
d) are you going

- a) will do  
c) are you doing

3 I ..... home after this lesson.

- c) am going      d) going to go

- a) going      b) going to

4 He ..... me at 2 pm tomorrow.

- c) meet      d) meeting

- a) met      b) is meeting

5 I ..... my cousins after work tomorrow.

- b) am visiting  
d) going to visit

- a) visits  
c) visited

6 He ..... to Oman on Friday for business.

- c) will have flown      d) is going to

- a) is flying      b) fly

7 We ..... a party on Friday night. Would you like to come?

- b) has  
d) going to have

- a) having  
c) are having

8 ..... anything on Saturday evening? We thought we might go to the cinema.

- b) Will you  
d) Are you going

- a) Are you doing

9 Hurry up! We ..... on the 10:15 train.

- b) are going to  
d) leave

- c) You doing

10 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 On Sunday at 8 o'clock, I ..... (meet) my friend.

2 They ..... (fly) to London on Friday evening at 8:15.

3 They ..... (drive) to New York tomorrow morning.

4 Dad can't take you to school. He ..... (have) a meeting at work at 8.30.

5 My pen friend is coming next week. He ..... (arrive) at the airport at 2:30 on Tuesday.



# Lessons 3 & 4

## General Exercises )

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نهاية الكتاب في الاستماع من

- 1 How old was Deepika when she invented the green system?  
 a) Four.      b) Fourteen.      c) Forty.      d) Fifteen.
- 2 Why did she invent the green system?  
 a) To clean water.      b) To use light.  
 c) To make water safe for people to drink.  
 d) Both a & c.
- 3 The green system uses light from the sun to .....  
 a) kill Bacteria      b) invent water  
 c) both a&b      d) neither a nor b
- 4 How is Deepika's system?  
 a) Expensive.      b) Dangerous.      c) Cheap.      d) Light.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

- 1 Some dangerous ..... cause pollution to the environment.  
 a) drones      b) filters      c) chemicals      d) tools
- 2 When ice melts, it turns into the ..... form.  
 a) soft      b) sold      c) gas      d) liquid
- 3 ..... are microorganisms that make us ill.  
 a) Bacteria      b) Filters      c) Chemicals      d) Drones
- 4 We usually go to the laboratory in ..... lesson.  
 a) chemistry      b) maths      c) art      d) history
- 5 ..... take the plastic out of the sea water, without hurting sea life.  
 a) Tools      b) Panels      c) Filters      d) Turbines
- 6 She invented a ..... system for cleaning water and making it safe for drinking.  
 a) red      b) green      c) black      d) white
- 7 We work ..... a great project to help the environment.  
 a) of      b) to      c) on      d) at
- 8 Mr Kamal ..... an important meeting this evening.  
 a) having  
 b) is having  
 c) going to have

- This is my last day here. I ..... back to England tomorrow.
- a) am going      b) am going to      c) going      d) go
- On Friday at 8 o'clock, I ..... my friend.
- a) am meeting      b) meeting      c) meets      d) going to meet

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
- 1 We ..... (do) a maths exam in two days.
- 2 Martin and Lizzie ..... (go) to the cinema at 3 tomorrow.
- 3 On Monday, they are ..... (visit) their grandparents.
- 4 Judy ..... (play) tennis at 8 this evening.

Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:  
"Environmental problems"

WB

6

24

## Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	24	54	(1-15) (16-25) (26-30) (1-11) (12-19) (20-24) (1-26) (27-45) (46-54)

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51-53 WB pages 104-106

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

#### Lesson 5

#### Activities

#### الأنشطة

bird watching	مشاهدة الطيور	horse riding	ركوب الخيل	snorkelling	سباحة بابيبة تنفس
bungee jumping	قفز بالمطاط	hot-air ballooning	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن	star gazing	نظر للنجوم
diving	الغوص	rock climbing	تسلق الصخور		
fishing	صيد السمك	sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال		
Lesson 6					
fortress	قلعة/حصن	postcard	بطاقة بريدية	salt lake	بحيرة مالحة
fresh dates	بلح طازج	ruins	أطلال	temple	معبد

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

#### Lesson 5

actually	في الواقع	bored	يشعر بالملل	negative	سلبي
afraid	خائف	bring (brought)	يحضر	positive	إيجابي
beginner	مبتدئ	exciting	مثير/شيق	scary	مُهْبِّب

#### Lesson 6

guess (ed)	يَخْمَنُ	Shali Fortress	قلعة شالي	Nabq Nature Reserve	سَعْيَة نَبْق الطَّبِيعَة (بِجَنُوب سِينَا،
hotel	فندق	Fatnasa Island	جزيرة فطناس (سيوة)	towel	شنطة/فوطة
news	أخبار	Siwa	سيوة	Wadi Kid	وادى كيد

## Language Expressions

## التعابيرات اللغوية

lesson 5	come ▶ diving	يأتي للغوص
get	▶ cold/ bored	يشعر بالبرد/بالملل

make ▶ arrangements يتخذ ترتيبات

lesson 6	call ▶ me later	اتصل بي لاحقاً
come	▶ home	يأتي إلى البيت

miss ▶ a lesson يفوت حصة

go ▶ there	يذهب هناك
have ▶ a fantastic time	يقضى وقتاً رائعاً
have ▶ a picnic	يقوم بتنزه
make ▶ dinner	يعد العشاء

one last thing شيء واحد آخر

the day before yesterday أول أمس

watch ▶ the stars يشاهد النجوم

watch ▶ the sunset يشاهد الغروب

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

Lesson 5	agree to + inf.	يوافق أن	go under water	يذهب تحت الماء	stay on the boat	يمكث/يبيق على القارب
Lesson 6	arrive at	يصل إلى	look forward to	يتطلع إلى	walk towards	يمشي تجاه
	by the water	بجوار الماء	on holiday	في إجازة		
	for breakfast	على الإفطار	stay with	يقيل مع		

## Language Notes

يذهب

## go + activities with ing

- go (snorkelling – rock climbing – horse riding, etc.)
- I like to go sandboarding.

## Write it right

### How to write about holidays

كيفية الكتابة عن الإجازات

- I had (an amazing – a horrible) holiday in (المكان).
- I was with my (الأشخاص الذين ذهبت معهم).
- It has (الأشياء، التي استمتعت بها أو التي عكرت صفو الرحلة).
- I went to (ذكر الأماكن التي قمت بزيارتها مع الوصف).
- I had (a great – a bad) time.

### Writing tips

Put your supporting ideas in logical order.

هي المذكرة الداعمة للنarrative في  
ترتيب المنطقى.

### Example



To : batool@gmail.com

From : basmala@gmail.com

Subject : A fantastic holiday

Dear Batool,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you are in a good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. I'm excited to tell you about my fantastic holiday. I had a great time. I had an amazing holiday in Siwa. It has the best places to visit. I saw the strange ruins of the Shali Fortress. I walked along the sandy road. I finished my day by taking a dive at Cleopatra's Pool. I didn't forget to buy some souvenirs on my way. I also visited the Siwa House Museum. I'm looking forward to seeing you. Best wishes.

Yours,

Basmala

### Check Point:

Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Gaser to tell him about a horrible holiday. Your name is Galal and your email address is galal@student.com. Your friend's email address is gaser@student.com

## Lesson 5



## Listening Text

**Pre-listening question:**  
What activities do you like doing in the desert?

2. Listen to three teenagers making arrangements. Which two of the activities from Exercise 1 do they talk about?

SB page 51

Kamal : Hi Amir. What are you doing this afternoon? I'm going rock climbing<sup>(1)</sup>. There is a special activity for beginners. Would you like to come?



Amir : I don't know. Rock climbing looks a bit scary<sup>(2)</sup> to me! Are you going, Nasser?

Nasser: Yes! I've always wanted to learn rock climbing! Oh, come on, don't be afraid<sup>(3)</sup>, Amir!

Amir : Actually, I can't come this afternoon; I'm helping my father with something.



Kamal : How about tomorrow afternoon instead? There's another rock climbing activity then at the same time.

Amir : OK! I'll come. You're right. It might be fun. Also, I wanted to ask you something: are you and Nasser free this evening?

Nasser: I think so. Why?

Amir : Dad is going to take me star gazing<sup>(4)</sup> into the desert with my brother Ramy and Uncle Sami and he said I could invite you, too.

Kamal : Thank you. We'd love to come, wouldn't we Nasser? I'd love to go to the desert at night. Is your brother Ramy going?

Amir : No, he doesn't want to. He thinks he'd get cold and bored!

Nasser: Well, I think it sounds really exciting!

Amir : Great! We're meeting outside my house at half past ten. See you then.

تساق الصخور (1)

مخيف (2)

خالق (3)

النظر للنجوم (4)

**Post-listening question:**

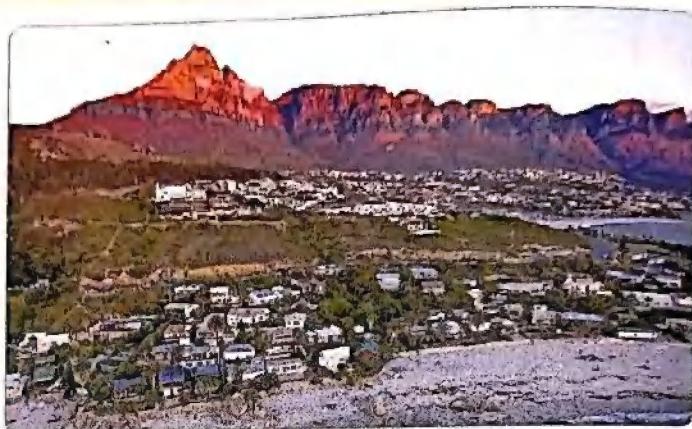
What's Amir's dad going to do?

**Pre-reading question:**

- In which place would you like to spend your next holiday?

**1. Read the postcard and answer the questions.**

SB pages 51

**Dear Nahla,**

I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa. Today, we had a picnic on Fatanas Island<sup>(1)</sup>. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful.

We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived the day before yesterday, it was very late. They still wanted to get up and make us dinner, and they bring us fresh dates<sup>(2)</sup> for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited Shali Fortress<sup>(3)</sup> and the Siwa Museum. I've always wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, we're going to visit the Siwa salt lake<sup>(4)</sup>. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting.

Lots of love

**Heba**

جزيرة فطناس (1)

بلح طازج (2)

قلعة / حصن (3)

بحيرة مالحة (4)

**Post-reading question:**

- Make a list of all the places that people can visit in Siwa.

Lesson 6



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:** - What are you going to do in ten minutes' time?

**Read Hamdi's email and circle the correct time expressions from Exercise 1.**

WB page 105



Hi

Guess where I am? **At the moment**, I'm walking in the desert in the Nabq Nature Reserve. It's really interesting.

**Yesterday**, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! **The day before yesterday**, we went diving in the coral reefs at Shoura al Manquata. The fish were amazing. **Tomorrow**, we're going to visit Wadi Kid. I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there. We're coming home **in three days' time**.

What are you doing? Write to me and tell me your news.

Best wishes, **Hamdi**



**Post-reading question:** - What does Hamdi want to see at Wadi Kid?

Lesson 7



## Reading Text

SB page 53



Hi

Are you busy? What are you doing this afternoon?

Please could you call me later because I need some help with the English homework! I had to go to the dentist, so I missed the last English lesson.

What did you study in English class last week?

One last thing – are you free on Saturday morning?

I'm playing tennis in the park. Would you like to come?

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 She enjoys horse ..... with her sister.  
 a) driving      b) riding      c) climbing      d) diving
- 2 We went ..... on the coral reef.  
 a) drawing      b) riding      c) diving      d) driving
- 3 Students from STEM Schools were able to ..... an app to help small farmers.  
 a) buy      b) develop      c) save      d) send
- 4 Let's ..... a picnic down by the river.  
 a) do      b) go      c) have      d) make
- 5 I like to ..... to see coral reefs.  
 a) fish      b) jump      c) climb      d) snorkel
- 6 I visited my friend because he ..... some help.  
 a) did      b) spent      c) had      d) needed
- 7 I usually have beans and cheese ..... breakfast.  
 a) for      b) on      c) in      d) to
- 8 I like to watch the ..... when the sun goes down.  
 a) planets      b) sunset      c) sunrise      d) stars
- 9 I'd like to go to the desert to enjoy .....  
 a) diving      b) bungee jumping  
 c) sandboarding      d) ballooning
- 10 She went to the mountains to try .....  
 a) bungee jumping      b) diving  
 c) snorkelling      d) rock climbing
- 11 I love birds. I want to go .....  
 a) bird watching      b) fishing      c) diving      d) swimming
- 12 I'm walking in the desert in Nabq Nature .....  
 a) Zoo      b) Reserve      c) Field      d) Garden
- 13 Fatanas is a beautiful ..... in Siwa.  
 a) iceland      b) island      c) city      d) lake
- 14 Farmers mustn't use too much water when they ..... their land.  
 a) feed      b) lend      c) irrigate      d) sell



## Speaking

### Suggestion and invitation

### الاقتراح والدعوة

Would you like to come to my birthday party?

هل تود أن تأتي إلى حفل عيد ميلادي؟

Why don't you go to the cinema?

لم لا تذهب إلى السينما؟

You could read a book in bed.

يمكنك قراءة كتاب في الفراش.

#### Accepting:

#### قبول الاقتراح/ الدعوة

Yes, that / it might be fun. سيكون هذا ممتعاً.

Great! Let's do that.

عظيم. هيا بنا.

thanks, I'd love to.

أشكرك. أود ذلك.

I think it sounds really exciting!

أعتقد أن هذا يبدو مثيراً حقاً.

We always wanted to do that.

أردت دائماً فعل ذلك.

It looks really exciting!

يبدو هذا مثيراً حقاً.

#### Refusing:

#### رفض الدعوة/الاقتراح

I think I'd get cold and bored.

أعتقد بأنني سأشعر بالملل والبرد.

It looks a bit scary to me!

يبدو هذا مخيفاً لي.

I'd love to do that, but ...

أود فعل ذلك ولكن ...

#### Not sure: عدم التأكيد

I don't know.

أنا لا أعرف.

I'm not sure.

لست متأكداً من ذلك.

## Speaking Exercise

### Complete the following dialogue:

Her and Imad are talking about their plans for the next weekend."

her : Would you like to go diving next weekend, Imad?

ad : I don't know.

her : We (1) ..... to see coral reefs.

ad : Diving under water looks a bit scary to me.

her : If you don't like going under water, (2) ..... stay on the boat.

ad : I think (3) ..... cold and bored on the boat.

her : (4) ..... you snorkel? Then you don't go under water but you can see the fish.

ad : Yes, that might be fun.

her : Great! Let's all snorkel. We don't need a boat, we can go from the beach!

ad : It looks (5) .....

# Lessons 5 & 6

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

"Maher is inviting Basel to have a picnic with him next Sunday."

**Maher** : Would you like to join us on Sunday?

**Basel** : I don't know.

**Maher** : (1) ..... to go on a picnic at the lake.

**Basel** : (2) ....., but I have a test on Thursday.

**Maher** : Our old friends are going to come.

**Basel** : I think I have to get ready for the test.

**Maher** : Why (3) ..... revise on Monday?

**Basel** : Yes, (4) ..... fun.

**Maher** : Great! Let's meet at the park gates at nine o'clock.

**Basel** : (5) ..... I'd love to do that.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(1) My father always comes ..... at three o'clock.

- a) to home      b) at home      c) in home      d) home

(2) Every teenager looks ..... having a modern mobile phone.

- a) forward      b) forward to      c) towards      d) for

(3) He wasn't at school yesterday, so he ..... an English lesson.

- a) had      b) won      c) missed      d) lost

(4) I went out in the evening to enjoy star .....

- a) jumping      b) gazing      c) diving      d) riding

(5) When she sees a/an ..... film at night, she can't sleep easily.

- a) scary      b) scared      c) exciting      d) amazing

(6) To go diving means to go ..... the water.

- a) over      b) above      c) by      d) under

(7) When I was in Luxor, I sent ..... to my best friends.

- a) massages      b) postcards      c) balloons      d) temples

(8) I ..... my uncle at the new restaurant tomorrow morning.

- a) am meeting      b) meet      c) meets      d) going to meet

- 9 The runner is running very fast. He ..... win.  
 a) will      b) is going      c) Is going to      d) going to
- 10 In twenty years' time, everyone ..... an electric car.  
 a) have      b) having      c) is going to have      d) had

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Sandy is ..... (watch) a film tonight.
- 2 She ..... (visit) her aunt at night the day after tomorrow.
- 3 It's 8.30! You ..... (miss) your train!
- 4 We ..... (use) drones fifty years from now.

4

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Nour to tell her about the most interesting holiday you had. Your name is Amira and your email address is amira@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nour@gmail.com.

6

25

### Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30  (1-14) (15-24) (25-30)	25  (1-12) (13-20) (21-25)	55  (1-27) (28-45) (46-55)	

 Video Script

**Narrator:** The Red Sea is very important. People visit from around the world to go scuba diving...and it's also home to many different *species*<sup>(1)</sup> of wildlife, such as fish, turtles and birds.

The Red Sea also contains many coral reefs. A coral reef is a *collection*<sup>(2)</sup> of colourful plants, animals and rocks that you can find under the sea near the coast. Coral reefs are important because they are a *habitat*<sup>(3)</sup> for lots of underwater animals, like this sea *anemone*<sup>(4)</sup> ... and this *shark*<sup>(5)</sup>. But many coral reefs around the world are in danger. They are going to disappear because the water in the seas and *oceans*<sup>(6)</sup> is getting warmer. The water in seas and oceans is going to be too hot for coral reefs in the future. Plastic is also damaging the reefs. There are *conservation*<sup>(7)</sup> groups that want to conserve the world's coral reefs. One of these is the Red Sea Environment Centre in Egypt. Scuba divers go to the coral reefs in the Red Sea twice a year to *investigate*<sup>(8)</sup> their *condition*<sup>(9)</sup>. The coral reefs in the Red Sea and all around the world are beautiful. We are going to lose them if we don't look after them.

أنواع/فصائل (1)

مجموعة (2)

موطن (3)

التنوع (4) (حيوان بحري يشبه الزهرة)

سمكة القرش (5)

محيطات (6)

الحماية/الحفاظ (7)

يفحص/يتتحقق من (8)

حالة (9)



# Unit 11 Review



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

			المفردات الرئيسية	
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	green	أخضر/نظيف للبيئة	reuse (d) يعيد استخدام
alarm clock	منبه	horse riding	ركوب الخيل	rock climbing تسلق الصخور
array	مجموعة/مصفوفة	hot-air ballooning	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن	ruins أطلال
bacteria	بكتيريا	improve (d)	يحسن	salt lake بحيرة مالحة
bird watching	مشاهدة الطيور	install (ed)	يثبت	sandboarding التزلج على الرمال
bungee jumping	القفز بالمطاط	jungle	أدغال	save (d) ينقذ/يحفظ/يدمر
canal	قناة/ترعة	kill (ed)	يقتل	sea life الحياة البحرية
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	lend	يسلف	seed بذرة
chemistry	الكيمياء	light	الضوء	snorkelling السباحة بأنبوبة تنفس
decay (ed)	يتحلل/يعفن	liquid	سائل	snow ثلج
desert	صحراء	lorry	لوري/شاحنة	solar panels ألواح شمسية
diving	الغوص	mangrove	شجرة المنجرف	solve (d) يحل
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	melt (ed)	ينصهر	star gazing النظر للنجوم
environment	البيئة	nature conservation	الحفاظ على الطبيعة	storm عاصفة
extra	إضافي	ocean	محيط	suitable مناسب
film (ed)	يصور فيلماً	planet	كوكب	suitcase حقيبة سفر
filter	فلتر (جهاز لتنقية)	plant (ed)	يزرع	system نظام
fishing	صيد السمك	pollute (d)	يلوث	temple معبد
flood (ed) (v/n)	يفيض/فيضان	postcard	بطاقة بريدية	traffic حركة المرور
forest	غابة	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع	turn (ed) يدور
fortress	قلعة/حصن	reduce (d)	يقلل	volunteer متطوع
fresh dates	بلغ طازج	remote control	جهاز التحكم عن بعد	wildlife الحياة البرية
get worse	يزداد سوءاً	repair = fix (ed)	يصلح	wind turbines توربينات الرياح



## Language

1

### *be going to*

Subject + am/is/are (not) + **going to** + inf.

- I can see some dark clouds. It **is going to rain**.
- The students **are going to do** very well in their exams. **They always get good marks**.
- I **am not going to meet** my friends tomorrow.

Am/Is/Are + subject + **going to** + inf.?

- Is your sister **going to get** married tomorrow? - What **are you going to do**?

2

### *The present continuous*

Subject + am/is/are (not) + **v.ing**

- I'm **visiting** the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
- We're **catching** our train at 12.30. We **aren't taking** the bus.

Am/ Is/Are + subject + **v.ing**?

- **Are** they **visiting** their aunt the day after tomorrow?
- Where **is** Nader **travelling** next week?



## Speaking

### 1. Suggestion and invitation

- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| - Would you like <b>to</b> come to my birthday party? | - I'd love to do that.       |
| - Why don't you <b>go</b> to the cinema?              | - Yes, that/it might be fun. |
| - You <b>could</b> read a book in bed.                | - It looks really exciting!  |

### 2. Making predictions and future plans

- What are you going to do at the weekend?
  - I'm going to visit my grandparents.
- How are you going to improve your English?
  - I'm going to have holiday courses.
- Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?
  - Sure. I'm going to reuse old parts from it to repair other phones.

1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) Malek : What are you doing this afternoon?

Mustafa : .....

B) Sarah : .....

Samira : No, I'm going nowhere next weekend.

2) Match column A with column B:

**A**

1. In Kaziranga National Park,
2. They are going to plant
3. What are you going to
4. It is Tuesday today, so Thursday is
5. Lara is playing tennis

**B**

- a) trees in front of their school.
- b) do at the weekend?
- c) do my homework.
- d) at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
- e) it sometimes rains a lot.
- f) the day after tomorrow.

Answers: 1. ( )      2. ( )      3. ( )      4. ( )      5. ( )

3) Write a paragraph of about (5) sentences on:

**"An activity you want to try in the future"**

# Test 5

Based on Unit 11

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1 How is Kojo?  
a) Fine.      b) Ill.      c) Sick.      d) Tired.
- 2 Where is Jenna going?  
a) The theatre.    b) The cinema.    c) The library.    d) The park.
- 3 Who is going with Jenna?  
a) Her brother.    b) Her sister.    c) Her aunt.    d) Her husband.
- 4 Did Kojo accept the invitation?  
a) Yes.    b) No.    c) Maybe.    d) I'm not sure.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

"Refaat and Taha are talking about the summer holiday."

Refaat: Are you going away this summer, Taha?

Taha : (1) .....

Refaat: Oh, that sounds exciting. Life is quiet on farms. (2) .....

Taha : I'll stay for five weeks.

Refaat: So, (3) ..... to enjoy your stay there?

Taha : Sure. I'm really looking forward to it. We'll help our uncle to plant crops.

Refaat: That's good! So, (4) .....

Taha : All my family.

Refaat: Have a nice holiday!

Taha : (5) .....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A visit to a garden or a park is quite important. With the increase of people in towns and cities, open spaces became very little. I like going to the garden and spending some time in the beautiful nature. A garden is a place of beauty. It presents a lot of joy for me. There is a beautiful garden just in front of my house. I enjoy sitting in the garden both in the morning and in the evening. At that time I forget all the difficulties of life. In the middle of the garden, there is

a fountain of water and a small tank. The tank is full of coloured fish of different kinds. Children go to the tank and play with the fish. The garden also has lots of birds. Many beautiful birds sit in the trees in the evening and sing their amazing songs. Many people visit the garden at different hours of the day. We have really a good time in the garden.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1 Put a suitable title for the passage.

2 What do the children like to do in the garden?

3 Where is the garden?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4 The underlined word "joy" is similar to .....

- a) happiness      b) sorrow      c) sadness      d) illness

5 ..... people visit that garden every day.

- a) Lots of      b) Few      c) Not many      d) Too few

6 The writer likes to go to the garden in the .....

- a) morning      b) afternoon      c) evening      d) a and c

**4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 There's a lot of air pollution from the ..... in our city.

- a) traffic      b) water      c) lake      d) solar panels

2 He finished fifth in the .....

- a) lake      b) solution      c) race      d) traffic

3 Scientists ..... new things to make our lives more comfortable.

- a) invent      b) damage      c) use      d) reduce

4 Scientists want to use a ..... to take plastic rubbish from the sea.

- a) system      b) diary      c) drone      d) panel

5 Don't drink water from a ..... because it can be harmful.

- a) tab      b) fridge      c) tape      d) canal

- 6 ..... what I bought for your birthday.  
 a) Bring      b) Guess      c) Lend      d) Borrow
- 7 ..... a bottle of water for me, please.  
 a) Bring      b) Guess      c) Lend      d) Borrow
- 8 Where are you going ..... on holiday?  
 a) travel      b) will travel      c) to travel      d) travelling
- 9 I've decided that I ..... to look for a new job.  
 a) will      b) can      c) have      d) am going to
- 10 I don't feel like going out this evening. I ..... stay at home and watch TV.  
 a) won't      b) going to      c) am going to      d) am going

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 A: Are you ..... (going / buy) another car? B: Yes, I am.
- 2 I ..... (going / meet) your dad tomorrow afternoon.
- 3 We ..... (have) a party next Thursday at our home.
- 4 I hope Egypt ..... (become) a developed country.

**6** Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Ways to help the environment"

## Unit 11



# Research Projects



## 1. How to help the environment

Do research on "How to help the environment".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What's the role that the environment plays?
- What does our natural environment give us?
- Mention the problems that face the environment.
- Explain what you are going to do to solve

these environmental problems.



## 2. Green inventions

Do research on "Green inventions".

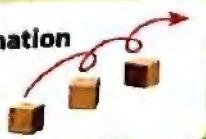
Use these guiding points to help you:

- What do we mean by green inventions?
- How useful are these inventions?
- Which environmental problems can green inventions solve? Support your answer with examples.
- How would the environment be like without green inventions?



### Research Steps

- 1 ► A suitable title
- 2 ► An Introduction
- 3 ► Main ideas and information
- 4 ► Results
- 5 ► Resources



# ALAWA OASIS

Which activities can you do in these places?

1



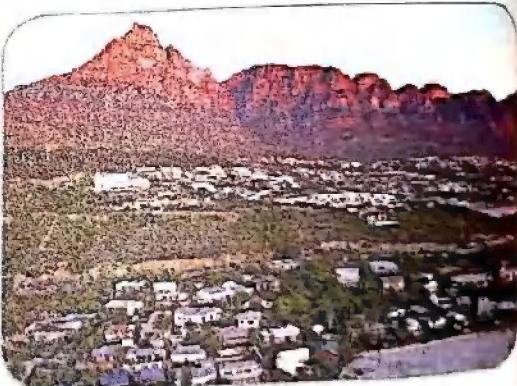
3



2



4



1

2

3

4



## Unit 12 Languages and learning

### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** : A quiz about learning styles; an article about languages in Africa; an advert for a language school

**Writing** : An internet post giving advice; a study plan; an application form

**Listening** : A conversation about future plans; a radio interview about animal communication

**Speaking** : Talking about learning styles; a presentation about your studies; a discussion about study tips; giving advice, opinions and suggestions

**Language** : A review of tenses

**Life Skills** : Self-management; Communication skills; Critical thinking



Tapescript

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 54-57 WB pages 107 & 108

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

<b>Lesson 1</b>			
directions	اتجاهات	laboratory = lab	معمل repair = fix (ed) بصلاح
discuss (ed)	يناقش	language	لغة summarise (d) يلخص
experiment	تجربة	learner	المتعلم summary ملخص
free time	وقت الفراغ	learning	التعلم text نص
instructions	تعليمات	mostly	في الغالب
<b>Lesson 2</b>			
disappointed (about)	محبط	manager	مدير secondary ثانوي
driving test	اختبار القيادة	proud	فخور university الجامعية

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

<b>Lesson 1</b>			
act (ed)	يتمثل	English grammar قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية	prefer (red) يفضل
advice	نصيحة	explain (ed) يشرح	remember (ed) يتذكر
continue (d)	يستمر	follow (ed) يتبع	result نتيجة
count (ed)	يعد	letter حرف	review نقد
diagram	رسم تخطيطي	podcast إذاعة صوتية/بث إذاعي	science مادة العلوم
<b>Lesson 2</b>			
Africa	قاربة إفريقيا	family shop محل الأسرة	skills مهارات
American	أمريكي	French اللغة الفرنسية	studies دراسات
castle	قلعة	Japan اليابان	theatre مسرح
change (d)	يغير/يتغير	laugh (ed) يضحك	tourist سائح
China	الصين	menu قائمة طعام	visitor زائر
factory	مصنع	scientist عالم	worry (x ied) يقلق

**Language Expressions****العبارات اللغوية****Lesson 1**

<b>do</b>	a project ► an experiment research	يقوم بعمل مشروع يقوم بعمل تجربة يقوم ببحث
<b>draw</b>	► a map	يرسم خريطة
<b>fail</b>	► an exam	يرسب في الامتحان
<b>learn</b>	► best	يتعلم أفضل
<b>make</b>	► a video	يصنع مقطع فيديو

make up ► a song

يؤلف أغنية

practise ► a language

يعارض لغة

read ► online

يقرأ على الانترنت

watch ► a TV show

يشاهد برنامج تلفزيوني

write ► a blog

يكتب مدونة

**Lesson 2**

<b>achieve</b>	► my dreams	تحقق أحلامي
<b>do</b>	► a job	يؤدي وظيفة
<b>give</b>	► a presentation	يقدم عرضاً تقديمياً
<b>make</b>	► notes	يدون ملاحظات
<b>present</b>	► an idea	يقدم فكرة

study ► hard

يذاكر بجدية

take ► a photograph  
an examيلقط صورة  
يأخذ امتحاناً

the last time

آخر مرة

**Prepositions****حروف الجر****Lesson 1**

agree <b>with</b>	يتتفق مع
ask <b>for</b>	يطلب
decide <b>to</b>	يقرر أن
find <b>out</b>	يكشف
for... at least	لمدة ... على الأقل

in different ways

بطرق مختلفة

look **in** a dictionary

يبحث في القاموس

make **up**

يؤلف

work **out**

يستنتج/ يستنبط

write **down**

يدون

**Lesson 2**

come <b>out</b>	يخرج
cut <b>down</b>	يقطع

hope **to** + inf.

يأمل

want **to** be

يريد أن يكون

**Words and Opposites****الكلمات و عكسها****Lesson 1**

hard	صعب	easy	سهل	regular	منتظم
------	-----	------	-----	---------	-------

irregular غير منتظم

**Lesson 2**

pass ( <b>ed</b> )	ينجح في	fail ( <b>ed</b> )	يفشل/ يرسب في	interesting	شيق
					uninteresting/ boring غير شيق/ ممل

## Conjugations of irregular verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير الم lautzende

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 1			
spell	يتعجب	spelt	spelt
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
write	يكتب	wrote	written
Lesson 2			
fall	يقع/يسقط	fell	fallen
fly	يطير	flew	flown
hurt	يصيب/ يؤذى	hurt	hurt

## Language Notes

## Kinds/Sorts of learners

أنواع المتعلمين

Reading and writing يعتمد على القراءة والكتابة	Seeing يعتمد على الرؤية
read books/ write stories/ love words/ take notes	watch videos/ look at diagrams/ love films or art/ see things
Doing يعتمد على فعل الأشياء	Listening يعتمد على الاستماع
make/ repair/ try to do/ hard to understand by listening or reading	love music and talking/ listen to people/ explain things/ discuss things

**busy + (v + ing)**

مشغول بـ

- You are always **busy** making and repairing things.

**by (v + ing)**

بواسطة/عن طريق

- You learn best **by** reading and writing.

**Check Point**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My mother is always busy ..... in the kitchen.  
 a) cook                    b) cooking            c) cooked                    d) cooks
- 2 You can pass your exams ..... studying hard.  
 a) by                    b) in                    c) at                    d) on

## Write it right



### How to write about sorts of learners

كيفية الكتابة عن أنواع المتعلمين

There are four kinds of learners.

Firstly, who learn best by reading and writing.

They like reading books or writing stories.

Secondly, who learn best by doing things.

They are always busy making and repairing things.

Thirdly, who learn best by seeing things.

They love to watch videos and look at diagrams.

Finally, who learn by listening.

They love music and are often talking!

### Writing tips

For each supporting idea, think of RENNS that further explain the idea.

فكرة في أسباب وأمثلة وأسماء وارقام  
ومشارع لكل فكرة داعمة لكي تساهم  
في شرح الفكرة بشكل أفضل.

### Example

There are four kinds of learners. Firstly, who learn best by reading and writing. They like reading books or writing stories. They love words and learn best by reading about something and taking notes. Secondly, who learn best by doing things. They are always busy making and repairing things. They learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading. Thirdly, who learn best by seeing things. They love to watch videos and look at diagrams. They love films and art. They learn things better if they can see them. Finally, who learn by listening. They love music and are often talking! They find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to others and by discussing things with them.

### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: "What type of learner you are"

"What type of learner you are"

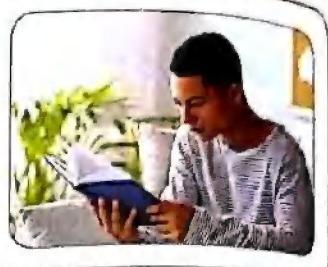


What type of learner are you? Take the quiz to find out!

SB page 54

**1. Which of these things do you prefer to do in your free time?**

- a) Read a book.
- b) Watch a film or TV show.
- c) Play a video game.
- d) Listen to music.



**2. If you want to learn how to play a new sport, what do you do?**

- a) Read online about how to play it.
- b) Watch a video of people playing it.
- c) Start playing and learn as you play.
- d) Ask for advice from someone who can play it.



**3. You need to tell your class about a new English book. What would you prefer to do?**

- a) Write a review of it.
- b) Make a short video about it.
- c) Act some of the book with friends.
- d) Read some of the book to your class.



**4. Someone asks you for directions<sup>(1)</sup>. What do you do?**

- a) Write down instructions<sup>(2)</sup>.
- b) Draw a map.
- c) Use your hands and body to explain<sup>(3)</sup>.
- d) Tell them where to go.



اتجاهات (1)
تعليمات (2)
يشرح (3)

**5. If you don't know how to spell a word, what do you do?**

- a) Look in a dictionary.
- b) Try to work out how to spell it.
- c) Write it down to see if it looks right.
- d) Say the word slowly to hear the sounds.



## Lesson 1



## Reading Text

1. Count how many of each letter you chose in the quiz. Then read about your result.

SB page 55



**I chose mostly a:**

**You learn best by reading and writing.**

You like reading books or writing stories. You love words and learn best by reading about something and taking notes.

(1) درس توضيحي

(2) يصلاح

**I chose mostly b:**

**You learn best by seeing things.**

You love to watch videos and look at **diagrams**<sup>(1)</sup>. You love films and art.

You learn things better if you can see them.

**I chose mostly c:**

**You learn best by doing things.**

You are always busy making and **repairing**<sup>(2)</sup> things. You learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading.

**I chose mostly d:**

**You learn by listening.**

You love music and are often talking! You find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to you and by discussing things with them.

**Pre-reading question:** - What are the four types of learners?

**2. What sort of learners are the following? Choose the correct words.**

**WB page 107**



- 1. Habiba likes summarising<sup>(1)</sup> a text.**  
For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes a summary<sup>(2)</sup> in about 15–20 words.  
**Habiba learns best by writing.**

يُلخص (1)
يُلخص (2)
يُوَجِّهُ اللغة الإنجليزية (2)
تجربة ملموسة (3)
عمل (4)



- 2. Fares remembers things easily. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today!**  
**Fares learns best by seeing things.**



- 3. For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar<sup>(3)</sup> is to make up a song about it! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember irregular verbs!**  
**Dareen learns best by listening.**



- 4. Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does an experiment<sup>(4)</sup> in the laboratory<sup>(5)</sup>, he always understands what is happening!**  
**Marwan learns best by doing things.**

**Post-reading questions:** 1. What type of learner is Dareen?

2. In which type of learning do people do experiments?

## Lesson 2



## Listening Text

## Pre-listening question:

What do you want to be when you grow up?

3. Listen to Fares and Nevine talking about their future plans. What jobs do they hope to do?

**Fares** : My name's Fares. When I was young, I didn't use to like studying. But, one day, I failed<sup>(1)</sup> an exam. My father was disappointed<sup>(2)</sup>. He said that one day he wanted me to be the manager<sup>(3)</sup> of our family shop. He explained<sup>(4)</sup> about all the skills<sup>(5)</sup> that I needed to work there: maths, reading, writing and English. Now I'm working hard to pass<sup>(6)</sup> my exams so I can make my family proud<sup>(7)</sup>. Next year, I'm starting secondary<sup>(8)</sup> school and I'll continue<sup>(9)</sup> to study hard!



- |                |
|----------------|
| (1) يربّب      |
| (2) محبط       |
| (3) مدير       |
| (4) يشرح       |
| (5) مهارات     |
| (6) بجتاز/ينجح |
| (7) فخور       |
| (8) ثانوي      |
| (9) يستمر      |
| (10) يحقق      |
| (11) الجامعة   |

**Nevine** : When I was nine, I was playing with my sister when I fell and hurt my arm. The doctor at the hospital was so clever and kind, so I decided I wanted to be a doctor too! I know it will be hard to achieve<sup>(10)</sup> my dream. I need to go to university<sup>(11)</sup> and pass lots of exams. My Uncle lives in the USA so I'm going to study there when I'm older and then I want to come back to Egypt and work in a hospital.



## Post-listening question:

What skills do you need to get a good job?

## Vocabulary EXercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Her teachers said she was a slow ..... because she can't hear well.  
 a) teaching      b) teacher      c) learner      d) learning
- 2 He's good at ..... . He likes English, French and German.  
 a) languages      b) experiments      c) arts      d) sports
- 3 This area of the country is ..... desert.  
 a) near      b) nearby      c) most      d) mostly
- 4 Could you give me the ..... to your house?  
 a) directions      b) instructions      c) experiments      d) exercises
- 5 Our teacher asked us to ..... the story in 3 pages.  
 a) summary      b) summarise      c) summer      d) summaries
- 6 There are more important problems we need to ..... .  
 a) discuss      b) die      c) kill      d) advise
- 7 Maya is very clever. She ..... the answers easily.  
 a) works in      b) works for      c) works at      d) works out
- 8 We should work hard to ..... our dreams.  
 a) forget      b) achieve      c) send      d) archive
- 9 Randa is ..... because she failed her driving test.  
 a) lucky      b) happy      c) proud      d) disappointed
- 10 When students finish school, they go to the ..... .  
 a) primary      b) preparatory      c) university      d) secondary
- 11 For me, the best way to remember English grammar is to ..... a song about it.  
 a) work out      b) clean up      c) make up      d) take off
- 12 I didn't ..... what job I'd like to do.  
 a) decide      b) summarise      c) follow      d) ask
- 13 To be good at English, you should ..... it more.  
 a) do      b) practise      c) summarise      d) follow
- 14 If you don't know a word, look it up in a ..... .  
 a) dictionary      b) presentation      c) photograph      d) project
- 15 I'm ..... to be a son for such a great father.  
 a) sad      b) proud      c) disappointed      d) ugly



## Language

### Tenses (present, past and future)

الازمنة (مضارع - ماض - مستقبل)

1

#### Present tenses

الزمنة المضارع

##### A) Present simple المضارع البسيط

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع + inf.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + inf. + s, es, ies

يستخدم للتعبير عن العادات المستمرة في الحاضر وعن الحقائق الثابتة.

- I **study** English on Fridays.
- My uncle **lives** in the USA.
- The sun **falls** in the west.

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع + don't + inf.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf.

- We **don't go** to school on Fridays.
- She **doesn't like** meat.

##### B) Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

I \_\_\_\_\_ am/ am not

am/ am not

verb + ing

He, She, It, اسم مفرد

is/ isn't

You, We, They, اسم جمع

are/ aren't

يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء يحدث الآن أثناء الكلام ويستمر لفترة.

- I'm **emailing** him **today**.
- They **aren't playing** **at the moment**.

Form &  
Usage  
النحو  
والاستخدام

Negative  
النفي

Form &  
Usage  
النحو  
والاستخدام

## 2

## Past tenses

أزمنة الماضي

## A) Past simple الماضي البسيط

Subject التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل

**Form & Usage**  
التكوين  
والاستخدام

يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء حدث في الماضي وانتهى وليس له أثر في الحاضر و مع سرد أحداث ماضية.

- She visited her aunt **last weekend**.
- I bought a new car **last week**.

يستخدم مع العادات التي كانت تحدث في الماضي فقط.

- I usually played football when I was young.

## Negative النفي

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf.

**Form**  
التكوين

- We didn't decide what to do after school.

## B) used to

اعتاد أن (في الماضي)

Subject الفاعل + used to + inf.  
Subject الفاعل + didn't use to + inf.

- I used to like basketball. I didn't use to like tennis!

## C) Past Continuous

الماضي المستمر

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد

was

You, We, They, اسم جمع

were

verb + ing

**Form & Usage**  
التكوين  
والاستخدام

شيء حدث في الماضي واستمر لفترة في الماضي/شيء حدث في وقت محدد في الماضي.

- The boys **were playing all day yesterday**.
- I **was studying yesterday evening**.

## When &amp; While

شيء حدث في الماضي (ماضي بسيط) أثناء حدوث شيء آخر (ماضي مستمر).

When + (past simple), (past continuous)  
While + (past continuous), (past simple)

- When it **started** to rain, I **was playing** tennis with my sister.
- While I **was playing** tennis with my sister, it **started** to rain.

## 3

## Future tenses

أرمنة المستقبل

## A) Will

Subject + will ('ll)/won't + inf.

عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل (بدون دليل).

- I think it will be hard but fun at university. I won't be bored.

Subject + will (won't) be able to + inf.

وللتعبير عن القدرة في المستقبل (سوف يكون قادراً على).

- If my mother has more free time, we'll be able to go out.

If/When + present simple + فاعل , مضارع بسيط will/won't + inf.

- If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.
- I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

## B) Be going to

I → am/am not

He, She, It, اسم مفرد → is/isn't

+ going to + inf.

You, We, They, اسم جمع → are/aren't

للتعبير عن نية أو قصد لفعل شيء في المستقبل تم التخطيط له.

- I'm going to help my father.

عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل بناءً على ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته (تبؤ بدليل).

- I can see some dark clouds. It is going to rain.

## C) Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

I → am/am not

He, She, It, اسم مفرد → is/isn't

verb + ing

You, We, They, اسم جمع → are/aren't

للخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية، غالباً مع الوقت والتاريخ (الشيء المرتبط به مسبقاً).

- I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.

## Language Exercises

**1** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Baher ..... computer games when his father came into the room.  
 a) played      b) was playing      c) is playing      d) plays
- 2 When I was a child, we ..... with my grandparents.  
 a) living      b) are living      c) lived      d) live
- 3 If you want mangoes, go to the market. They ..... really good fruit there.  
 a) sell      b) are selling      c) were selling      d) sold
- 4 I cut my finger while I ..... dinner ready.  
 a) got      b) get      c) am getting      d) was getting
- 5 The phone ..... Could you answer it?  
 a) rings      b) is ringing      c) was ringing      d) rang
- 6 Yesterday, the meeting ..... at 10 o'clock.  
 a) begin      b) begins      c) begun      d) began
- 7 Look at these clouds, it ..... in a minute!  
 a) rains      b) will rain      c) is raining      d) began
- 8 I ..... tennis every Sunday morning.  
 a) am playing      b) will play      c) is going to play      d) is going to rain
- 9 We ..... America next month.  
 a) visit      b) going to visit      c) would visit      d) are visiting

**2** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 When I opened my eyes, I ..... (see) a strange sight.
- 2 Every morning, she ..... (wake) up early and gets ready for work.
- 3 We ..... (watch) TV when it started to rain.
- 4 Look! It ..... (rain), so we can't go to the beach.
- 5 Next month, I ..... (able to) drive a car.



## Speaking

### Talking about learning styles

التحدث عن أساليب التعلم

1. How do you prefer to learn?

كيف تفضل أن تتعلم؟

\* I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing.

- أحب أن اتعلم بطريق مختلفة. لا أحب عمل نفس الشيء دائمًا.

2. What type of classes are your favourite?

ما نوع الحصص المفضلة لديك؟

\* I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen.

- أحب الحصص التي تجعلنا نقوم بفعل الأشياء عن حصص القراءة والاستماع.

3. What type of learning would you like to do more?

ما نوع التعلم الذي تود أن تؤديه بشكل أكبر؟

\* I learn best by doing things.

- أفضل طريقة للتعلم بالنسبة لي عن طريق فعل الأشياء. (التعلم العملي).

4. What type of learning would you like to do less?

ما نوع التعلم الذي تود أن تؤديه بشكل أقل؟

\* I learn less by listening.

أتعلم بشكل أقل عن طريق الاستماع.

Type a message



## Speaking Exercise

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**"Hadeer and Ghada are talking about learning styles."**

Hadeer : Hello, Ghada. Can I ask you some questions for my school project?

Ghada : Sure. What is it about?

Hadeer : Learning styles. So, (1) ..... prefer to learn?  
 Ghada : I (2) ..... to learn in different ways.

Hadeer : (3) ..... of learning would you like to do more?  
 Ghada : I (4) ..... by reading and writing.

Hadeer : What type of learning would you like to do less?  
 Ghada : (5) .....

Hadeer : Thanks for answering my questions, Ghada.

Ghada : Glad to help.



5

Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer and Hani are talking about the exam results."

Tamer : Did you see the results of the exams?

Hani : (1) ..... . What about you?

Tamer : I passed all my exams, too.

Hani : Great news! (2) .....

Tamer : Of course, they are proud of me.

Hani : What (3) ..... going to do?

Tamer : I didn't decide, yet. What about you?

Hani : (4) .....

Tamer : (5) ..... great! I think you will be a good doctor.

Hani : Thank you very much.

10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The teacher asked us to write ..... important notes.

- a) down      b) in      c) up      d) on

2 Some children are good at ..... up stories.

- a) picking      b) getting      c) doing      d) making

3 My little brother always makes us ..... . He's very funny.

- a) cry      b) laugh      c) shout      d) fail

4 Students feel happy when they ..... their exams.

- a) pass      b) fail      c) drop      d) take

5 When we arrived at the restaurant, the waiter gave us the ..... to choose our dish.

- a) summary      b) report      c) menu      d) list

6 My brother studies ..... to be a doctor.

- a) fast      b) hard      c) badly      d) slowly

7 Many ..... came to my house yesterday evening.

- a) reasons      b) causes      c) visitors      d) results

8 My mother ..... breakfast right now.

- a) cook      b) is cooking      c) was cooking      d) cooked

# UNIT 12

- 9 He ..... a new car last week.  
 a) buys      b) buying      c) buys      d) bought
- 10 They usually ..... basketball on Fridays.  
 a) play      b) are playing      c) were playing      d) played

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 The sun ..... (rise) in the east.
- 2 At the moment, I ..... (revise) English grammar.
- 3 I think Sara ..... (arrive) next week.
- 4 It ..... (be) great and I think I learned a lot.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:  
 "Types of learning"

25

## Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	
(1-14) (15-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-25)	(1-27) (28-45) (46-55)	

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58-60 WB pages 109 & 110



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3				
communicate (d)	يتواصل	funny	مضحك	مخيف
communication	تواصل	lovely	جميل	صوت هادئ
field	ملعب/حقل	possible	ممكн	داعبة

### أنواع/أشكال التواصل

body language	لغة الجسد	facial expressions	تعابيرات الوجه	اللمس
drawing	رسم	sounds	أصوات	صوت بشري
eye contact	الاتصال بالعين	speaking	التحدث	الكتابة

Lesson 4				
advantages	مميزات	expert	خبير	متعدد اللغات
community	مجتمع	home language	اللغة الأم	قومي/وطني
connect (ed) to/ with	يتصل بـ	identity	هوية	كل
dialect	لهجة/لغة بلد ما	international	دولى/عالمى	

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3				
animal	حيوان	clothes shop	محل ملابس	يفتقد
best friend	أفضل صديق	difference	اختلاف	أنف
blind	عمى	different	مختلف	نتيجة
busy library	مكتبة مزدحمة	horse	حصان	يتنتظر

# UNIT 12

## Lesson 4

African	أفريقي	join (ed)	ينضم/يضم	Portuguese	اللغة البرتغالية
Africa	قاربة إفريقيا	nearly	تقريباً	quality	جودة/ميزة
area	منطقة	normally	عادة/في العادة	Romansh	رومانش (اللغة)
European	أوروبى	own	ملك/خاصة بـ	Switzerland	سويسرا

## Language Expressions

### Lesson 3

copy ▶ sounds	ينسخ الأصوات	say ▶ hello	يقول مرحباً
give ▶ some advice	يعطى بعض النصائح	sound ▶ different	يبدو مختلفاً
have ▶ heads down	يحنى رأسه لأأسفل	spend ▶ time with	يقضى وقتاً مع
make ▶ a noise	تحدى ضوضاء/ضجة	be ▶ friends with	يكون صداقاً مع
Lesson 4	give ▶ identities	يعطى الهويات	يتحدث لغة
		speak ▶ a language	

## Prepositions

### Lesson 3

at the front door of	عند الباب الأمامي لـ	go away	يذهب بعيداً/يتبع	on the phone	في التليفون
careful about	حريص على	look after	يعتنى بـ	sit on a side of	يجلس على جانب
communicate with	يتواصل مع	on a farm	في مزرعة	talk to	يتكلم مع
disappointed with	محبط من	on the internet	على الانترنت	walk into	يدخل

### Lesson 4

bring together	يجلب معاً	in different ways	بطرق مختلفة	in what ways	بأي الطرق
different to	مختلف عن	in the southwest of	في جنوب غرب	proud of	فخور بـ

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات و عكسها

Lesson 3	inside داخلي	outside خارجي	quiet هادئ	noisy صاخب / مزعج
Lesson 4	advantages مميزات	disadvantages عيوب	possible ممكناً	impossible مستحيل

## Conjugations of irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

	Present	Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3	choose يختار	chose	chosen
hear يسمع	heard	heard	
leave يترك / يغادر	left	left	
understand يفهم	understood	understood	
Lesson 4	bring يحضر	brought	brought
mean يعني / يقصد	meant	meant	

## Definitions

## التعريفات

Lesson 4	advantages مميزات	the good things about something
connect يوصل	bring things together	
dialect لهجة / لغة بلد ما	a way of speaking used in one area	
experts خبراء	people who know lots about a subject	
identities هويات	the qualities that make you different to other people	
multilingual متعدد اللغات	be able to speak many languages	
national وطنى / قومى	of or for the whole country	

## Language Notes

## 1 Countries and languages

Country الدولة	Language اللغة	Egypt مصر	England إنجلترا	Italy إيطاليا	Germany ألمانيا	France فرنسا
Arabic اللغة العربية	English اللغة الإنجليزية	Italian اللغة الإيطالية	German اللغة الألمانية	French اللغة الفرنسية		

voice

## صوت شیء / sound / صوت بشري

- People can use their voice and bodies to communicate with animals.
  - The sound of the drums is very noisy.

**3** miss + v + ing

- I miss **being** on the beach with my friends.

4

**get + شخص + to + inf.**

- I got her to spend time with me.



## Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

## Write it right

### How to write about the importance of learning many languages كيفية الكتابة عن أهمية تعلم عدة لغات

- Learning other languages is a form of communicating with other nations.
- There are many reasons why learning a new language is a good idea.
- It helps you to communicate with new people.
- It helps you to see things from a different view.
- It helps you to become a better listener.
- It also gives people different identities.
- It connects you to an international community.

#### Example

#### Learning languages

Learning other languages is a form of communicating with other nations because we never understand the other countries without knowing their languages. There are many reasons why learning a new language is a good idea. It helps you to communicate with new people. It helps you to see things from a different view, or understand other cultures. It helps you to become a better listener. It helps you to understand both your home and the world better. It also gives people different identities. It connects you to an international community.

#### Check Point:

Write a paragraph of (90) words on "Multilingual people".

#### "Multilingual people"

#### Writing tips

Brainstorm supporting ideas. Choose 2 - 6 supporting ideas that do a good job supporting your topic sentence.

قم بالبحث عن أفكار مساعدة لموضوع الفقرة. اختر من ٦-٢ أفكار لتساعدك على دعم جملتك الرئيسية.



**Pre-listening question:** - Do you think animals can understand us?

**3. Listen to a podcast about animals. What types of communication from Exercise 1 does Dr Ahmed talk about?**

**SB page 58**



يعلم (1)
يواصل (2)
ممكن (3)
ينسخ الأصوات (4)
لغة الجسد (5)
صوت هادئ (6)
مراجعة (7)

Munir : What do you know about animals? Do you think they understand<sup>(1)</sup> you? Today, I'm talking to Dr Ahmed who is going to tell us about how animals communicate<sup>(2)</sup>. Hello, Dr Ahmed.

Dr Ahmed : Hello.

Munir : Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm. My brother is a farmer and I think that his cat understands him sometimes. Is that possible<sup>(3)</sup>?

Dr Ahmed : I'm sure the cat understands when he is angry and understands words like 'dinner', for example.

Munir : But of course, the cat can't talk to him.

Dr Ahmed : No, animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can copy sounds<sup>(4)</sup>. But animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language<sup>(5)</sup>. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like and bees dance when they find a good flower.

Munir : So can I learn to communicate better with animals then?

Dr Ahmed : From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you. You should be careful about how you use your body and voice. So, if an animal is scared, you should move slowly and use a soft voice<sup>(6)</sup>. How about listening to the way your cat makes a noise? Does it sound different if it is frightened, wants a stroke<sup>(7)</sup> or if it wants some food? I think it will!

**Post-listening question:** - How do animals communicate?

## Lesson 3



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:** - What are your problems with your brothers and sisters?

6. Read this post from the internet. What's the girl's problem? **SB page 59**

Can anyone give me some advice<sup>(1)</sup>?

I have an older sister (she's three years older than me).

We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

She tells me to go away<sup>(2)</sup> if I try to talk to her. I miss<sup>(3)</sup> being friends with her. How can I get her to spend time with me again?

Please give me some advice!

Yours, Radwa



نصائح (1)

يغادر (2)

يفتقد (3)

**Post-reading question:** - What advice would you give her?

## Lesson 4

2. Complete the text with the correct form of the words from Exercise 1

(there is one word you do not need).

**WB page 110**

### The languages of Switzerland

Switzerland is a small European country. Here, you do not need to be an expert to speak many languages. That is because nearly all people in Switzerland are multilingual: they speak the country's four national languages. That is because each area of Switzerland has always had its own identity and its own language.



The parts of Switzerland near Italy speak Italian, the parts near Germany speak German and the parts near France speak French. In the southwest of Switzerland, they also speak a dialect called Romansh.

Each language connects the people with their area, but they are also very proud of their country.



### Life Skills

- When might you need to use each of the forms of communication in Exercise 1?
- Why do you think good communication is so important?



## Pre-reading question:

- How many languages do you speak? What are they?

2. Read the text quickly and answer the questions.

SB page 60

### Multilingual<sup>(1)</sup> Africa



متعدد اللغات (1)
الخبراء (2)
يعتقد/ يصدق (3)
لمنجة/ لغة بلد ما (4)
وطن، قومي (5)
ميزات (6)
هويات (7)
يوصى (8)
مجتمع (9)
دولى (10)

Experts<sup>(2)</sup> believe<sup>(3)</sup> that there are more than 2,100 languages spoken in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect<sup>(4)</sup> (or home language), the national<sup>(5)</sup> language and another European language such as English, French or Portuguese that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual! Of course, many people speak more than three languages!

People who speak different languages have lots of advantages<sup>(6)</sup>. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.

It also gives people different identities<sup>(7)</sup>. If you speak your home language, it connects<sup>(8)</sup> you to your community<sup>(9)</sup>. Your national language connects you to your country and all the other people in it. An international<sup>(10)</sup> language, like English, connects you to an international community.

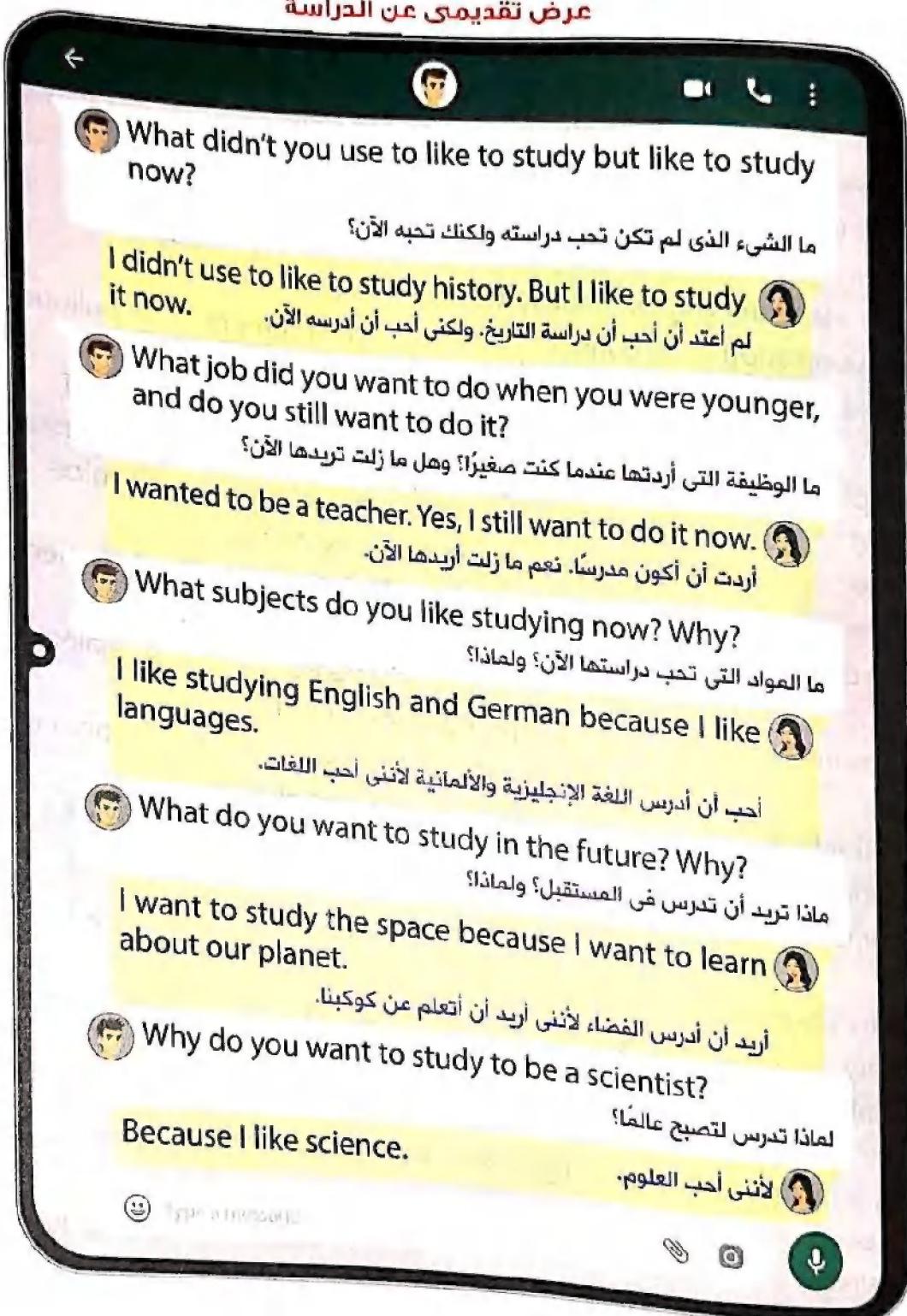
## Post-reading question:

- What is the importance of being multilingual?

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The house is ..... and warm. I like it very much.
- a) bad      b) lovely      c) ugly      d) sad
- The children couldn't sleep yesterday because they saw a ..... film.
- a) scary      b) funny      c) lovely      d) exciting
- We knew you were angry from your .....
- a) drawing      b) touch      c) writing      d) facial expressions
- Animals use many ways in their systems of .....
- a) communication      b) connect      c) environment      d) pollution
- The players left the ..... when the match ended.
- a) barn      b) park      c) farm      d) field
- We all speak the Yorkshire ..... here, but of course you don't understand that.
- a) dialect      b) local      c) sound      d) voice
- Keep eye ..... kindly and smile when meeting others.
- a) touch      b) communicate      c) contact      d) connect
- Rex, the dog, soon became a/an ..... at opening the gate.
- a) identity      b) expert      c) export      d) dialect
- Using the internet can ..... me to the whole world.
- a) touch      b) communicate      c) contact      d) connect
- Do you think it's ..... to communicate with animals?
- a) possible      b) soft      c) scared      d) young
- If an animal is scared, you should move slowly and use a ..... voice.
- a) loud      b) hard      c) soft      d) high
- The police are trying to find out the ..... of the thief.
- a) identity      b) language      c) sound      d) contact
- I think animals need a ..... when they are scared.
- a) stroke      b) strike      c) stock      d) stoke
- One of the many ..... of living in New York is that you can eat out at any time of the day.
- a) discourages      b) encourages      c) advantages      d) disadvantages
- He speaks five languages. He is .....
- a) monolingual      b) multilingual      c) bilingual      d) trilingual


**Speaking**
**A presentation about studies**
**عرض تمهيدي عن الدراسة**


**What didn't you use to like to study but like to study now?**

ما الشيء الذي لم تكن تحب دراسته ولكنك تحبه الآن؟

I didn't use to like to study history. But I like to study it now.

لم اعتد أن أحب أن دراسة التاريخ. ولكنني أحب أن أدرسه الآن.

**What job did you want to do when you were younger, and do you still want to do it?**

ما الوظيفة التي أردتها عندما كنت صغيراً؟ وهل ما زلت تريدها الآن؟

I wanted to be a teacher. Yes, I still want to do it now.

أردت أن أكون مدرساً. نعم ما زلت أريدها الآن.

**What subjects do you like studying now? Why?**

ما المواد التي تحب دراستها الآن؟ ولماذا؟

I like studying English and German because I like languages.

أحب أن أدرس اللغة الإنجليزية والألمانية لأنني أحب اللغات.

**What do you want to study in the future? Why?**

ماذا تريد أن تدرس في المستقبل؟ ولماذا؟

I want to study the space because I want to learn about our planet.

أريد أن أدرس الفضاء، لأنني أريد أن أتعلم عن كوكبنا.

**Why do you want to study to be a scientist?**

لماذا تدرس لتصبح عالماً؟

Because I like science.

لأنني أحب العلوم.

Send a message

## 2) Advice, Opinions and Suggestions

النصيحة والآراء والمقترنات

النصيحة

### A) Advice:

- You should + inf.
- You should be careful about how you use your body and voice.

الرأي

### B) Opinion:

- I think .....
- From my point of view, .....
- I think that his cat understands him.
- From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you.

الاقتراح

### C) Suggestions:

- Let's + inf.
- How about + V+ing...?
- Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm.
- How about listening to how your cat makes a noise?

## Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

"Nour and Hanaa are talking about studies."

Nour : Hello, Hanaa. What job did you want to do when you were younger?

Hanaa : I always wanted to be (1).....

Nour : (2).....?

Hanaa : Because I like helping ill people.

Nour : Do you still want to do it?

Hanaa : Yes, (3).....

Nour : (4)..... do you like studying now?

Hanaa : I like studying English and science.

Nour : What subjects don't you like to study?

Hanaa : (5).....

# Lessons 3 & 4

## General Exercises

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

4

- 1 Why are the players disappointed? - Because they .....  
 a) took the cup    b) played well    c) won    d) lost
- 2 How are the players leaving the field?  
 a) Slowly.    b) Quickly.    c) Happily.    d) Excitedly.
- 3 What sport do they play?  
 a) Handball.    b) Tennis.    c) Football.    d) Basketball.
- 4 How do you know they were disappointed?  
 a) By voice.    b) By touch.    c) By sounds.    d) By their body language.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

- 1 Can you tell me the ..... between the two countries?  
 a) difference    b) different    c) intelligent    d) intelligence
- 2 They were disappointed and ..... their heads down.  
 a) gave    b) made    c) took    d) had
- 3 The teacher told the pupils not to ..... noise.  
 a) make    b) do    c) have    d) see
- 4 I wanted my mum to help me, but she told me to ..... as she was busy.  
 a) throw    b) wait    c) play    d) run
- 5 I ..... that we will win the World Cup one day.  
 a) give    b) tell    c) believe    d) discover
- 6 You should ..... hello to the people you meet.  
 a) say    b) tell    c) talk    d) speak
- 7 My sister spends too much time ..... the phone.  
 a) at    b) on    c) to    d) with
- 8 While he was eating, the phone .....  
 a) ring    b) rings    c) rang    d) ringing

- 9 I ..... the news two hours ago.  
 a) hear b) heard c) was hearing d) will hear
- 10 Where's Nader? He ..... football with his friends.  
 a) plays b) was playing c) will play d) is playing

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We ..... (have) a party at 3 next Monday.

2 I ..... (not able / see) you tomorrow.

3 He ..... (usually / spend) his holiday by the sea.

4 Look! Basmala ..... (climb) over the wall.

4

6

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend, Mounir to tell him about the importance of learning languages. Your name is Waleed and your email address is waleed@student.com. Your friend's email address is mounir@student.com.

24

### Assess Your Progress

#### Dictation

#### General Exercises

#### Total Marks

#### Notes

30

24

54



(1-15) (16-25) (26-30)



(1-11) (12-19) (20-24)



(1-26) (27-45) (46-54)

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 61 - 63 WB pages 111 - 113

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

Lesson 5

		المفردات الرئيسية	
alone	بمفرده	furniture	أثاث
article	مقال	manage (d)	يدبر/يتمكن
connect (ed)	يوصل	organise (d)	ينظم
context	سياق	plan (ned)	يخطط
flashcards	بطاقات تعليمية	quiet space	مكان هادئ
Past participle adjectives		صفات (من التصريف الثالث لل فعل)	
broken	مكسور	known	المعروف
connected	متصل	organised	منظم
Lesson 6			
address	عنوان	improve (d)	يحسن
calm	هدئ	language school	مدرسة لغات
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	nationality	جنسية
fire	حرق/نار	noisy	مزوج/صاخب
frightened	خائف	personal statement	بيان شخص
			written
			مكتوب
			phone number
			رقم الهاتف
			realise (d)
			يدرك
			summer course
			دورة صيفية
			vet
			طبيب بيطرى
			volunteer
			متطوع

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 6

add (ed)	يضيف	engineer	مهندس	pronunciation	نطق
application form	استمارة طلب	enjoy (ed)	يسعد	punctuation	علامات ترقيم
area	منطقة	fact	حقيقة	smoke	دخان
building	مبنى	friendly	ودود	spelling	الحاجة
carefully	بحذر / بحرص	information	معلومات	stay (ed)	يقيم / يعکش
comment	تعليق	library	مكتبة	topic	موضوع
correctly	بشكل صحيح	practise (d)	يمارس	website	موقع الكتروني

## Language Expressions

## العبارات اللغوية

Lesson 5

make	► a study timetable	يعمل جدولًا دراسيًّا
make	► flashcards	يعمل بطاقات تعليمية
manage	► your time	تدبر وقتك

Lesson 6

complete	► a form	يُكمل استمارة
do	► sports/activities	يؤدي رياضة/أنشطة
do	► well	يؤدي جيدًا
get	► better	يتحسن

## Prepositions

study ► for exams يذاكر للاختبارات

take ► a break يأخذ استراحة

have ► fun يمرح

sound ► fun يبدو مرحًا

walk ► past يمشي مارًّا بـ

## حروف الجر

Lesson 5

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	in context	في السياق
good at	جيد في	organised by topic	مرتبة حسب الموضوع

Lesson 6

advert for	إعلان لـ	come from	يأتي من
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	for summer course	لدورات الصيف

test (ed) (on) يختبر على

useful for مفيدة لـ

from around the world من جميع أنحاء العالم

hear from يتلقى رسالة/أخبار من

## Conjugations of irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 5 break	يكسر	broke
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt
Lesson 6 spell	يتهجئ	spelt
spend	يقضى	spent

## Definitions

## التعريفات

Lesson 6

disappointed	محبط	how you feel if you fail an exam
improve	يحسن	to get better at something
organised	منظم	able to plan things carefully
pass	ينجح	what you want to do when you take an exam
personal statement	بيان شخصي	where you tell someone about yourself
voice	صوت	a sound that comes from your mouth

## Language Notes

## 1 find + adj.

- I find it **hard** when I revise English.

يجده

We often use the past participle to make the adjective form of verbs.

غالبًا ما نستخدم التصريف الثالث لتكوين الصفة من الأفعال.

- known / معروف
- broken / مكسور
- connected / متصل
- written / مكتوب
- organised / منظم

## 2

The chair is **broken**.

- The chair is **broken**.

Every student should be **organised**.

## 3

## spend + v.ing

- You can **spend** the afternoons **doing** sports or other activities.

يقضي



## Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Most young people spend too much time ..... their social media.

a) check  
b) checking

c) checked  
d) to check

- 2 You may find it ..... to remember new vocabulary.

a) hard  
b) hardly

c) noisy  
d) noisily

## Write it right



### How to write about learning vocabulary

كيفية الكتابة عن تعلم مفردات اللغة

- Many people speak (اللغة) around the world.
- To improve your (اللغة), you should practise it.
- The most important part in learning (اللغة) is the vocabulary.
- There are some steps that help you to learn (اللغة) vocabulary.
- Make flashcards of words that you need to remember, organised by topic.
- Read the words in context, so you can see how it works with other words.
- Don't try to remember too many words at the same time.
- Read as many stories and news articles as you can.

### Writing tips

Don't actually write sentences in the outline form, except for the topic sentence.

- لا تقم بكتابة الجمل كاملة في أول شكل تمحيصي للكتابة بل اكتب كل الأفكار في شكل نقاط و اكتف فقط بكتابة الجملة الرئيسية

### Example



**To** : malek@gmail.com  
**From** : adam@gmail.com  
**Subject** : Learning vocabulary

Dear Malek,

I'd like to tell you about learning new vocabulary. English is the most popular spoken language all over the world. Many people speak English around the world. To improve your English, you should practise it. The most important part in learning English is the vocabulary. There are some steps that help you to learn English vocabulary. Make flashcards of words that you need to remember, organised by topic. Read the words in context: that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words. Don't try to remember too many words at the same time. Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for known words. Read as many stories and news articles as you can.

Write soon.

Yours, Adam

**Check Point:** Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Tasneem to tell her about learning English. Your name is Aya. Your email address is aya@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is tasneem@yahoo.com.

**Pre-reading question:**

- Do you have a problem in learning English language? If yes, what's your problem?

**3. Complete the study plan with these words.**

WB page 111

**Study plan: how to learn English vocabulary<sup>(1)</sup>**

1. Make flashcards<sup>(2)</sup> of words that you need to remember, organised<sup>(3)</sup> by topic (for example, words for furniture).
2. Write the words in context<sup>(4)</sup>: that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words.
3. Don't try to remember too many words at the same time: find how many words is best for you.
4. Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for known words.
5. Read as many stories and news articles<sup>(5)</sup> as you can: it's the best way to learn vocabulary!
6. Work with a friend and try to test each other on important words.

المفردات اللغوية (1)

بطاقات تعليمية (2)

منظم (3)

سياق (4)

متعدد (5)

**Post-reading question:**

- Do you think this way is going to help you learn new words?

## Lesson 6



## Reading Text

**Pre-reading question:** - How can you improve your English language?

1. Read the advert for a language school in England. Would you like to study there? Why/Why not?

SB page 62

### English Language Summer School for Teenagers!

Do you want to improve<sup>(1)</sup> your English?

Would you like to study in England with other young people from around the world?

Come and stay at Hapstone House, in the south of England, for our summer courses! You can study every morning with our friendly<sup>(2)</sup>, expert teachers and spend the afternoons doing sports or other activities.

Every weekend we visit famous English places (like London or Oxford).

Learn English,

have fun,

visit England!

For more information<sup>(3)</sup>, visit our website<sup>(4)</sup>.



(1) يحسن

(2) ونور

(3) معلومات

(4) موقع إلكتروني

## Lesson 6

1. Mario is writing an email to an English language school.

WB page 112

Listen and correct the underlined words.



Hi

My name's Mario. I am fourteen years old. My birthday is 14 February and I'm from Italy. My address is 7 North Road, Rome and my phone number is 889900. I don't have email (my parents don't like computers!). I want to improve my English because I want to do well in my exams next year. I think that your course sounds fun and I think I will enjoy your activities. I love playing sports such as football and tennis. I look forward to hearing from you,

Yours, Mario Dollo

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 When did you ..... to drive a car?  
 a) succeed      b) fail      c) pass      d) manage
- 2 We should always be ..... to do better in our life.  
 a) random      b) broken      c) organised      d) known
- 3 Kamal has no family. He lives ..... .  
 a) alone      b) connected      c) written      d) organised
- 4 Can I ..... my printer to your computer?  
 a) contact      b) connect      c) communicate      d) improve
- 5 How long do you ..... to stay with your uncle?  
 a) connect      b) pass      c) manage      d) plan
- 6 You must ..... well for the next exams.  
 a) fail      b) revise      c) pass      d) manage
- 7 Can you mend this ..... table?  
 a) broken      b) break      c) passing      d) manage
- 8 This part of the exam wants a ..... answer.  
 a) write      b) writing      c) wrote      d) broke
- 9 I am not good at French. I want to ..... it.  
 a) connect      b) improve      c) manage      d) written
- 10 Many students want to go to a ..... school to be good at English.  
 a) strange      b) nearby      c) language      d) pass
- 11 She lives in France but she has a British ..... .  
 a) international      b) national      c) nationality      d) local
- 12 The farmer called the ..... because his cow is sick.  
 a) actor      b) artist      c) dentist      d) local
- 13 I'll give you my ..... and telephone number.  
 a) address      b) title      c) article      d) vet
- 14 .....  
 a) address      b) title      c) article      d) date

5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

"Monir is telling Samia about the importance of learning English language."

Samia: What are you reading, Monir?

Monir: (1) ..... an English language learning book.

Samia: Why do you read it? (2) ..... learn another language.

Monir: You don't know the importance of learning English.

Samia: Sorry. (3) ..... explain it to me?

Monir: Well, English is an international language. In every field of life, we need English.

Samia: But (4) ..... very difficult to me.

Monir: I don't think so. It sounds easy.

Samia: (5) .....

Monir: I am learning English online.

10

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He works as a/an ..... . He helps in many charities.

- |           |              |           |        |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|--------|
| a) expert | b) volunteer | c) player | d) vet |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|--------|

2 She was ..... of flying.

- |         |               |               |          |
|---------|---------------|---------------|----------|
| a) good | b) interested | c) frightened | d) scary |
|---------|---------------|---------------|----------|

3 The ..... caused a lot of damage to the building.

- |          |            |          |         |
|----------|------------|----------|---------|
| a) title | b) website | c) smoke | d) fire |
|----------|------------|----------|---------|

4 Every student should ..... a study plan to organise his study.

- |         |       |         |         |
|---------|-------|---------|---------|
| a) make | b) do | c) take | d) give |
|---------|-------|---------|---------|

5 Some people don't know how to ..... their time.

- |         |         |           |         |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------|
| a) fail | b) pass | c) manage | d) take |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------|

6 People shouldn't work all the time. They should ..... breaks.

- |           |         |         |         |
|-----------|---------|---------|---------|
| a) borrow | b) take | c) give | d) make |
|-----------|---------|---------|---------|

7 My teacher is pleased with me because I ..... well in the last exam.

- |        |         |        |          |
|--------|---------|--------|----------|
| a) did | b) made | c) had | d) spent |
|--------|---------|--------|----------|

8 I ..... sports every day.

- |        |         |       |              |
|--------|---------|-------|--------------|
| a) did | b) done | c) do | d) was doing |
|--------|---------|-------|--------------|

# UNIT 12

- 9 They ..... a tasty meal last week.  
 a) cooked      b) cook      c) are cooking      d) will cook

- 10 The teacher ..... our tests at the moment.  
 a) marks      b) marked      c) marking      d) is marking

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 They ..... (go) abroad in 2022.  
 2 She usually ..... (travel) to Hurghada in summer.  
 3 Abdullah ..... (eat) when Nadeen came in.  
 4 I am going ..... (write) a letter to my classmate on Friday.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend, Samar to advise her how to learn new vocabulary. Your name is Rania and your email address is rania@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is samar@hotmail.com.

25

## Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks	Notes
30	25	55	
(1-14) (15-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-25)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-55)	



## Video Script

Hieroglyphics<sup>(1)</sup> was a form of writing that was used in Ancient Egypt. It used pictures to represent<sup>(2)</sup> letters and words. For example, this picture is the letter 'A' in English.

We know how to read these pictures because of the Rosetta Stone<sup>(3)</sup>, which was found in Rashid in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. The Rosetta Stone is special. It was – perhaps – the world's first language dictionary. That is because the stone has both hieroglyphics and writing in the language of Ancient Greece<sup>(4)</sup>.

Before they found the Rosetta Stone, people didn't understand the meaning of hieroglyphics. However, experts who understood Ancient Greek could work out what the pictures meant.

But did you know that many of us still use a form of hieroglyphics today? These are emojis<sup>(5)</sup> and people sometimes use them when they are sending text messages to their friends. Like hieroglyphics, emojis use pictures to represent letters or words. This emoji means that the writer is happy ... and this one means the writer is sad.

Some emojis even look like hieroglyphics, like this scarab beetle<sup>(6)</sup> and this ladybird<sup>(7)</sup>. They both mean different things, however. The scarab beetle was used to represent 'strong' and the ladybird is used to represent 'good luck'.

Do you know what these emojis mean?

اللغة العبروغلغبية (1)

تمثل (2)

حجر رشيد (3)

اليونان القديمة (4)

الرموز التعبيرية (5)

الجعران الفرعوني (6)

الدعسوقة (7)



# Unit 12 Review

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية	
address عنوان	fire حريق/نار
advantages مميزات	flashcards بطاقات تعليمية
alone بمفرده	free time وقت الفراغ
article مقال	frightened خائف
body language لغة الجسد	funny مضحك
broken مكسور	furniture أثاث
calm هادئ	home language اللغة الأم
communicate يتواصل	identity هوية
communication تواصل	improve (d) يحسن
community مجتمع	instructions تعليمات
connect (ed) يصل	international دولي/عالمي
connect to (ed) يصل إلى	known معروف
date of birth تاريخ الميلاد	laboratory = lab معمل
decide (d) يقرر	language school مدرسة لغات
dialect لهجة/لسان بلد ما	learner المتعلم
directions اتجاهات	learning التعلم
disappointed (about) محبط	lovely جميل
discuss (ed) يناقش	manage (d) يدير/يتتمكن
drawing رسم	mostly في الغالب
driving test اختبار القيادة	multilingual متعدد اللغات
expert خبير	nationality جنسية
eye contact الاتصال بالعين	organised منظم
facial expressions تعبيرات الوجه	personal statement بيان شخصي
field ملعب/حقل	plan (ned) يخطط
	proud (of) فخور
	quiet space مكان هادئ
	realise (d) يدرك
	repair = fix (ed) يصلح
	revise (d) يراجع
	scary مخيف
	secondary ثانوي
	sounds أصوات
	study plan خطة دراسية
	summarise (d) يلخص
	summary ملخص
	summer course دورة صيفية
	text نص
	timetable جدول مواعيد
	title عنوان (مقال)
	touch اللمس
	university جامعة
	vet طبيب بيطرى
	vocabulary مفردات اللغة
	voice صوت
	volunteer متطوع
	whole كل
	writing الكتابة
	written مكتوب



## Language

### Tenses (present, past and future) الأزمنة (مضارع - ماض - مستقبل)

#### A) Present

- My uncle **lives** in the USA. I'm **emailing** him today.

#### B) Past

- I **was playing** tennis with my sister when it started to rain.
- I **didn't use to like** tennis! I **used to like** basketball.

#### C) Future

- Next year, I'm **starting** secondary school.
- I'm **going to go** to university. I'm **not going to get** a job.
- I think it **will be** hard but fun at university. I **won't be** bored.



## Speaking

### 1. Talking about learning styles

1. How do you prefer to learn?  
- I like to learn in different ways.
2. What type of learning would you like to do more?  
- I learn best by doing things.
3. What type of learning would you like to do less?  
- I learn less by listening.

### 2. A presentation about studies

- What didn't you use to like to study but like to study now?  
- I didn't use to like to study history. But I like to study it now.
- What subjects do you like studying now? Why?  
- I like studying English and German because I like languages.

### 3. Advice, Opinions and Suggestions

- You **should be careful** about how you use your body and voice.
- I think that his cat understands him.
- Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm.

## 1 Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

- A) Eman : When was the last time you felt disappointed?  
Eyad : ...

- B) Somya : .....  
Samira : Yes, I am. .... ?

2) Yes, I would like to learn more than one language.

A	B
1. From my point of view, it's important to watch	a) to an international community.
2. An international language connects you	b) language of Egypt?
3. Do you want to improve	c) European country.
4. When I was three years old,	d) and listen to what animals are trying to tell you.
5. Switzerland is a small	e) I didn't use to go to school.
	f) your English?

**Answers:** 1. ( )

2. ( )

3. ( )

4. (

5. ( )

3 Write an email of about (5) sentences (50 words) to your friend, Bassem to tell him about the importance of learning another language. Your name is Eslam.

Your email address is eslam@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is bassem@student.com.

# Test 6

## Based on Unit 12

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Where is this text taken from?

- a) A story.      b) A film.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

2 What does this text want?

- a) A volunteer.

- b) A nurse.

- c) A baby sitter.

- d) A manager.

3 Who does this text want to help?

- a) Dentists.      b) Doctors.

- c) Nurses.

- d) Teachers.

4 What do the children like to do to learn English?

- a) Playing games.

- b) Listening to songs.

- c) Listening to stories.

- d) All of these.

### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ola and Injy are talking about how to look after a baby.

Ola : I'm looking after my baby cousin Lina today. Isn't she lovely?

Injy : Yes, but (1) ..... understand what she wants?

Ola : (2) ..... view, you should first look at the baby's facial expressions.

Injy : (3) ..... I look at her expressions?

Ola : To know if she is happy or sad.

Injy : That's (4) .....

Ola : I think Lina's tooth is hurting her. You can see from her body language.

Injy : What should we do?

Ola : (5) ..... try to make her laugh.

Injy : Good idea. We could sing a funny song!

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Everyone should plan for his future job. Some students want to be doctors or engineers because they are the most important jobs these days. But I'm slightly different. I'll tell you how I decide to choose this job.

When my father was younger, he used to help on his uncle's farm. One day, he walked past the building where the horses slept when he saw some smoke. He realised that there was a fire. The horses were frightened and they didn't want to leave the building. My father was very calm and made eye contact with the horses.

4

5

6

Then he carefully took them from the building. When I heard this story, I decided that I wanted to become a vet. Next year, I will start studying at university. I think it will be difficult work, but I love animals. I'm looking forward to working with them in the future.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1 What's the main idea of the passage?
- 2 How could the writer's father take the horses out of the fire?
- 3 Which jobs do most students want to be? Why?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ..... .
 

a) the people	b) smoke	c) the horses	d) fire
---------------	----------	---------------	---------
- 5 The writer wants to be a/an ..... .
 

a) vet	b) doctor	c) dentist	d) engineer
--------	-----------	------------	-------------
- 6 The underlined word "slightly" means ..... .
 

a) a bit	b) a lot	c) much	d) none of these
----------	----------	---------	------------------

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 My homework was difficult, so I asked my elder brother to ..... it. WB
 

a) fix	b) explain	c) follow	d) repair
--------	------------	-----------	-----------
- 2 My sister will ..... an exam next Monday. WB
 

a) take	b) give	c) make	d) fail
---------	---------	---------	---------
- 3 Most of the pollution in our area comes from the ..... near the river. WB
 

a) house	b) university	c) school	d) factory
----------	---------------	-----------	------------
- 4 Most people use social media to ..... with each other. WB
 

a) communicate	b) contact	c) connect	d) sound
----------------	------------	------------	----------
- 5 My father was angry when I played next to him, so he told me to ..... WB
 

a) take away	b) throw away	c) run away	d) go away
--------------	---------------	-------------	------------
- 6 To ..... is to get better at something. WB
 

a) improve	b) connect	c) contact	d) complete
------------	------------	------------	-------------

10

it. WB

- 7 He felt disappointed when he ..... the exam.  
 a) improved      b) did      c) passed      d) failed
- 8 Mariam is good at languages. She ..... French, Spanish and German. WB  
 a) will speak      b) spoke      c) is speaking      d) speaks
- 9 She can't come to the phone now because she ..... for tomorrow's test. WB  
 a) studies      b) is studying      c) will study      d) has studied
- 10 Yesterday at nine, he ..... in front of his computer. WB  
 a) sits      b) sat      c) sit      d) was sitting

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Sara usually ..... (put) on black shoes.
- 2 Tomorrow, I think I ..... (start) my new project.
- 3 He ..... (stay) with his cousins these days.
- 4 While I ..... (walk) to school, I saw an old friend.

4

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:  
 "The most important language in the world"

5

35

## Unit 12

# Research Projects

### 1. Types of communication

Do research on "Types of communication".  
Use these guiding points to help you:

- What are the different types of communication?
- What types of communication do most people use? Why?
- What types of communication do animals mostly use?
- Why do you think good communication is so important?



### 2. Learning new languages

Do research on "Learning new languages".  
Use these guiding points to help you:

- How can we learn new languages?
- What's the importance of learning new languages?
- What is the most popular language people should learn?
- How can language connect people to the international world?



## Research steps

- 1 ➤ A suitable title
- 2 ➤ An Introduction
- 3 ➤ Main Ideas and Information
- 4 ➤ Results
- 5 ➤ Resources





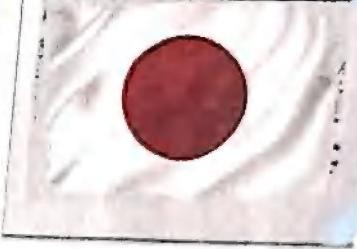
# ALA WA WA OASIS

Search the internet and try to find out how people say "Thank you"  
in these countries.

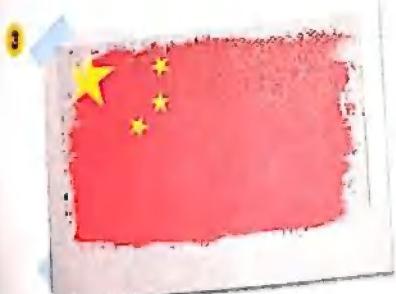
# Thank You!



1



2



3

4

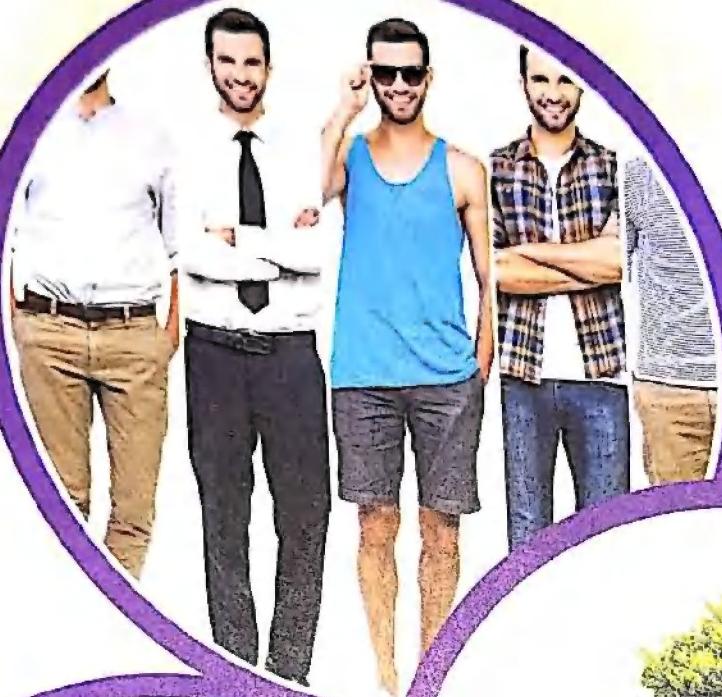


5

6



# Review D Units 10, 11 & 12



Tapescript

# Review D

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 114 & 115

Lesson 1



## Listening Text

1. Listen to the talk about a school trip. What information is in the letter?

SB page 64

**Voice:** Next month is our school camping trip. We're leaving in three weeks and camping for three nights. The bus is leaving at 8 am on the 10<sup>th</sup> May and we will be back on the 13<sup>th</sup> at 6 pm. As you know, we're going to the desert and it will be hot in the day and cold at night. You will need to bring loose, cool clothes for the day and warm night clothes. You will also need comfortable trainers because we're going to do lots of walking. You're going to be learning about life in the desert and about the geography of the area. You'll also need a camera, notebook and pen. Please take this letter for your parents which has all the information that you'll need.



Lesson 1



## Listening Text

4. Listen to check your answers, then role-play the dialogue.

WB page 114

**Guide:** We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.

**Karim:** Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top?

**Guide:** No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.

**Karim:** It looks a bit scary to me!

**Guide:** From my point of view, it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.

**Karim:** OK, what should I wear?

**Guide:** You should wear these thick leather boots, and this hard, plastic hat.

**Karim:** This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size?

**Guide:** Here you are. Does it fit?

**Karim:** Yes, thank you.

**Guide:** OK, let's go up the mountain!

## Lesson 2



## Reading Text

## Pre-reading question:

- How can we save the environment?

1. Read the article about a shop and choose the correct words.

**SB page 65**



On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The Eco Shop only sells things that are environment-friendly.

Last week, we talked to the owner, Mariam El-Soory, about her new shop. "Lots of people want to help the environment but it is sometimes difficult to know what to buy. We are working with lots of people to help local industries, too. So we're going to sell local fruit and vegetables, Egyptian, cotton luxury clothes and other local things that don't damage the environment. You can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling. We will also have cooking and sewing classes at the shop soon".

Mariam worked for many years as a guide at a beach. She was sad because she saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach. When she picked up some rubbish one day, she decided she wanted to do more to help the environment and had the idea of a shop.

The shop is having an opening party at 1 pm in three days' time.

## Post-reading question:

- Would you like to buy things in a shop like this? Why/ Why not?

Lesson 1



## Reading Text

## Pre-reading question:

- How did people use to send messages in the past?

2. Read the article again and answer the questions.

WB page 114



New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have improved over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before they send a message!

## Post-reading question:

- Do you think that phones will know what you think in the future?

# Practice

D

Based on Units 10, 11 & 12

1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What is Tarek wearing?

- a) A wool scarf.
- c) A wool robe.

2 What is Tarek's robe made of?

- a) Wool.
- b) Cotton.

3 How does Osama look in his clothes?

- a) Traditional.
- b) Not good.

4 What colour is Osama's T-shirt?

- a) Blue.
- c) Black.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

4

b) A white shirt.

d) A short scarf.

c) Silk.

d) Wood.

c) Smart.

d) Ugly.

b) White.

d) Blue and white.

2

Complete the following dialogue:

"Karim is asking the guide about the instructions of climbing a mountain."

**Guide** : We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.

**Karim** : Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top?

**Guide** : No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.

**Karim** : It looks a bit (1) ..... to me!

**Guide** : (2) ..... view, it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.

**Karim** : OK, (3) .....

**Guide** : You should wear these thick leather boots, and this hard, plastic hat.

**Karim** : This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size?

**Guide** : Here you are. (4) .....

**Karim** : Yes, (5) ..... fit?

5

3

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our world today is completely different from the past. We have many inventions that weren't found in the past. Also, we have technology in many fields of life. New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have improved over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special

6

letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before they send a message!

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1 What has happened to phones over the last 20 years?

.....

2 How did people use to send messages on a phone?

.....

3 Do you think that phones will know what we think in the future?

.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4 The underlined pronoun "their" refers to .....

- a) phones      b) letters      c) people      d) messages

5 Now phones can understand .....

- a) people's faces      b) people's voices  
c) people's bodies      d) people's movements

6 People started to ..... the screens on their phones to type their messages.

- a) see      b) voice      c) sound      d) touch

**C) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore ..... white, linen clothes with a belt.

- a) casual      b) loose      c) wooden      d) modern

2 I sometimes ..... my sister's clothes.

- a) save      b) protect      c) lend      d) borrow

3 Many people work in the cotton .....

- a) industry      b) tourism      c) farm      d) field

4 There was a fire in the flats and ..... saved a family.

- a) engineers      b) waiters      c) firefighters      d) vets

10

- 5 You should put solar ..... on your roof so you can make electricity.  
 a) panels      b) turbines      c) tools      d) machines
- 6 My father is an engineer. He's always busy making and ..... things.  
 a) damaging      b) repairing      c) saving      d) polluting
- 7 If you speak your home language, it connects you to your .....  
 a) world      b) community      c) planet      d) globe
- 8 That beautiful dress is the ..... my grandmother made me.  
 a) that      b) this      c) one      d) ones
- 9 She ..... on her project tomorrow afternoon.  
 a) is working      b) works  
 c) worked      d) was working
- 10 I ..... lunch when Sandy arrived.  
 a) have      b) will have      c) had      d) was having

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Can I buy ..... (that) earrings in the window?
- 2 A: Are these your books? B: No, mine are the ..... (one) on the table.
- 3 The boy and his father ..... (going/watch) a football match.
- 4 I ..... (not/use/like) tennis! I used to like basketball.

**6** Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"What you are going to do next summer"

## Listening Texts

### Unit 7

#### General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d:

My parents say that I spend too much time online, but playing video games is my hobby. I love playing games with my friends but my parents say they will take my computer away.

#### Test 1 (Based on Unit 7)

Listen and choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d:

Lama ordered a new mobile phone last week. The delivery was today. When she opened the box, the screen was damaged. She wanted to change the phone for a new one. She sent an email to the shop.

### Unit 8

#### General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d:

To make foul mudammas, wash some beans and put them in a pan. Add some water and salt to the beans. Heat the beans in the water until it boils. Pour some lemon juice over the hot beans.

#### Test 2 (Based on Unit 8)

Listen and choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d:

A healthy diet means eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food. We should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables. We should eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein.

### Unit 9

#### General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d:

Louis Braille, who was born in 1809, became blind after an accident when he was three. Louis decided to make it easier for blind people to read. When he was 15, he wrote his first book of signs. The signs took his name: Braille.

### Test 3 (Based on Unit 9)

Listen and choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d:

Jurassic World is an adventure film. The stars of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a theme park where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs escape.

### Review C

#### Practice C (Based on Units 7, 8 & 9)

Listen and choose the correct answer from  
a, b, c or d:

There are a few people on the bus, but a lot of people are waiting to get on the bus. A few people have big shopping bags. There is a man running. He only has a little time to get to the bus stop. He is carrying a lot of things.

### Unit 10

#### General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from  
a, b, c or d:

The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because cotton from Egypt is very good.

#### Test 4 (Based on Unit 10)

Listen and choose the correct answer from  
a, b, c or d:

These trainers were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them. They are much better than the ones I used to wear. I usually wear sports clothes because they are comfortable.

### Unit 11

#### General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from  
a, b, c or d:

Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a green system for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink. Her system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill bacteria in water.

### Test 5 (Based on Unit 11)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Jenna : Hello, Kojo. How are you?  
Kojo : I'm very well. How are you?  
Jenna : Great! By the way, my husband and I are going to the theatre tonight. Would you and your wife like to join us?  
Kojo : I'd love to, but we have other plans tonight. Maybe some other time.

### Unit 12

#### General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

It's the end of a football match. All the players in the blue team are leaving the field very slowly. They all have their heads down. We know they are disappointed with the result.

### Test 6 (Based on Unit 12)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

We have lots of young children who love playing English games and listening to English songs and stories. If you have one or two hours a week to help our busy teachers, send us a personal statement.

### Review D

### Practice D (Based on Units 10, 11 & 12)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Tarek is wearing a long, loose, cotton robe. He's also wearing a long, wool scarf. Osama is wearing casual clothes. He looks smart. He's wearing a T-shirt with a blue and white shirt over it.